

SIMPLY CLEVER

ŠKODA



ŠKODA Octavia Owner's Manual



Layout of this Owner's Manual (explanations)

This Owner's Manual has been systematically designed to make it easy for you to search for and obtain the information you require.

Chapters, table of contents and subject index

The text of the Owner's manual is divided into relatively short sections which are combined into easy-to-read **chapters**. The chapter you are reading at any particular moment is always specified on the bottom right of the page.

The **Table of contents** is arranged according to the chapters and the detailed **Subject index** at the end of the Owner's Manual helps you to rapidly find the information you are looking for.

Direction indications

All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units of measurement

All values are expressed in metric units.

Explanation of symbols

-  Denotes a reference to a section with important information and safety advice in a chapter.
-  Denotes the end of a section.
-  Denotes the continuation of a section on the next page.
-  Indicates situations where the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible.
-  Denotes a registered trademark.
-  Denotes the display in the MAXI DOT display.
-  Denotes the display in the segment display.

Display

In this owner's manual, the monochrome screen "black and white" MAXI DOT display is used as the display illustration, provided it is not otherwise stated.

Notes

WARNING

The most important notes are marked with the heading **WARNING**. These **WARNING** notes draw your attention to a **serious risk of accident or injury**.

CAUTION

A **Caution** note draws your attention to the possibility of damage to your vehicle (e.g. damage to gearbox), or points out general risks of an accident.

For the sake of the environment

An **Environmental** note draws your attention to environmental protection aspects. This is where you will, for example, find tips aimed at reducing your fuel consumption.

Note

A normal **Note** draws your attention to important information about the operation of your vehicle.

Documentation of vehicle delivery

Date of delivery/first registration^{a)} (VIN)

			/				/						
--	--	--	---	--	--	--	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

Vehicle identification number

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

--

ŠKODA Partner
Stamp and signature of the vendor

I confirm that I have taken delivery of the specified vehicle in good condition, have received information on how to operate it correctly, and have had the terms of the warranty explained to me.

Signature of the customer

ŠKODA extended warranty

--

Stamp of ŠKODA Partner

Limitations of the ŠKODA extended warranty^{a)}

Years: _____

or

km: _____

Valid from: _____

^{a)} (whichever comes first).

^{a)} (whichever comes first).

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

You have received a vehicle with the latest technology and range of amenities. Please read this Owner's Manual carefully, because operation in accordance with these instructions is a prerequisite for proper use of the vehicle.

If you have any questions about your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (hereinafter referred to only as ŠKODA or manufacturer)



Terms used

The on-board literature contains the following terms relating to the service work for your vehicle.

- "Specialist garage" - a company that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA Partner, a ŠKODA Service Partner, or an independent workshop.
- "ŠKODA Service Partner" - A workshop that has been contractually authorized by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to perform service tasks on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.
- "ŠKODA Partner" - A company that has been authorized by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

The owner's manual

These operating instructions apply to all **body variants** of the vehicle and to all related **models**.

This Owner's Manual describes all possible **equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment.

Consequently, your vehicle **does not need to contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's Manual.

The level of equipment in your vehicle refers to your purchase contract for the vehicle. More information is available from the ŠKODA Partner from whom you bought the vehicle.

The **illustrations** can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended for general information.

Table of Contents

Materials defect liability and ŠKODA warranty for new cars	5
---	---

Mobility warranty and ŠKODA extended warranty	6
--	---

Abbreviations

Using the system

Cockpit	9
Overview	8
Instruments and warning lights	11
Instrument cluster	11
Warning lights	15
Warning icons in the display	21
Information system	26
Driver information system	26
Driving data (Multifunction display)	29
MAXI DOT display	31
Service interval display	33
Unlocking and opening	35
Unlocking and locking	35
KESSY	41
Anti-theft alarm system	42
Luggage compartment lid	43
Electric luggage compartment lid (Octavia Estate)	44
Electrical power windows	47
Panoramic sliding/tilting roof (Octavia)	50
Panoramic sliding/tilting roof (Octavia Estate)	51
Lights and visibility	54
Lights	54
Interior lights	61

Visibility	64
Windscreen wipers and washers	65
Rear mirror	68

Seats and useful equipment	71
Adjusting the seats	71
Seat features	76
Practical equipment	79
Luggage compartment	91
Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)	99
Net partition (Octavia Estate)	101
Roof rack system	103

Heating and air-conditioning	106
Heating, ventilation, cooling	106
Heating	108
Air conditioning system (manual air conditioning system)	110
Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system)	112
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)	115

Driving

Starting-off and Driving	118
Steering	118
Starting and stopping the engine using the key	119
Starting and stopping the engine - KESSY	121
Brakes	124
Manual shifting of gears and pedals	126
Automatic transmission	126
Running in	130
Economical driving and environmental sustainability	131
Avoiding damage to your vehicle	135
Driving abroad	136

Assist systems	137
Brake assist systems	137
Parking aid	140
Park assist	142
Cruise Control System	146
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)	148
Area monitoring system (Front Assist)	154
START-STOP	158
Driving mode	161
ProActive passenger protection	163
Lane Assist	164
Traffic sign recognition	166
Fatigue detection (break recommendation)	168

Towing a trailer	169
Towing device	169
Trailer	172

Safety

Passive Safety	176
General information	176
Correct seated position	177

Seat belts	180
Using seat belts	180
Inertia reel and belt pretensioners	183

Airbag system	185
Description of the airbag system	185
Airbag overview	186
Deactivating airbags	190

Transporting children safely	193
Child seat	193
Fastening elements	196

General Maintenance

Vehicle care	198
Service intervals	198
Service work, adjustments and technical alterations	200
Washing your car	203
Taking care of your vehicle exterior	205
Taking care of the interior	208

Inspecting and replenishing	212
Fuel	212
Engine compartment	215
Engine oil	219
Coolant	221
Brake fluid	223
Vehicle battery	224

Wheels	228
Tyres and wheel rims	228
Winter operation	234

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help	235
Emergency equipment	235
Changing a wheel	237
Tyre repair	240
Jump-starting	243
Towing the vehicle	244
Remote control	246
Emergency unlocking/locking	248
Replacing windscreen wiper blades	249

Fuses and light bulbs	251
Fuses	251
Bulbs	255

Technical data

Technical data	263
Vehicle data	263

Index

Materials defect liability and ŠKODA warranty for new cars

Materials defect liability

Your ŠKODA Partner, as a vendor, is liable to you for material damage to your new ŠKODA car, ŠKODA Genuine Parts or ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in accordance with statutory regulations and the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA warranty for new cars

As well as the materials defect liability, ŠKODA AUTO a.s. grants you the ŠKODA warranty for new cars (hereinafter referred to as "ŠKODA warranty)," according to the conditions described below.

As part of the ŠKODA warranty, ŠKODA AUTO a.s. will guarantee the following services:

- Repair of damage to your vehicle that occurs within two years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty;
- Repair of paint damage to your vehicle that occurs within three years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty;
- Repair of rust perforation to the bodywork of your vehicle that occurs within twelve years from the start of the warranty. Only rust perforation of body sheets from the inside to the outside is included in the definition of rust perforation to bodywork and covered by the ŠKODA warranty.

The warranty starts on the date on which the original purchaser acquires the vehicle upon purchasing it from the ŠKODA Partner or the date of first registration. Whichever event occurs first and is recorded by the ŠKODA Partner in the service schedule accordingly is the one that applies.

Repairs may be carried out either by replacing the faulty part or by restoring it. Replaced parts become the property of the ŠKODA Service Partner.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty. In particular, there shall be no claims for replacement, cancellation, provision of a courtesy vehicle for the duration of repairs or compensation for damages.

If your ŠKODA vehicle was purchased from a ŠKODA Partner in a country of the European Economic Area (i.e. the countries of the European Union, Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein) or in Switzerland, claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty must also be made through a ŠKODA Service Partner in one of these countries.

If your ŠKODA vehicle was purchased from a ŠKODA Partner outside the European Economic Area and Switzerland, claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty must also be made through a ŠKODA Service Partner outside the European Economic Area and Switzerland.

One of the conditions for service from the ŠKODA warranty is that all service work has been carried out in a timely and adequate manner and in accordance with the manufacturer's provisions. It must be proven that service work has been carried out properly and in accordance with the manufacturer's provisions when raising a claim from the ŠKODA warranty. In the event of a missed service or failure to carry out a service according to the manufacturer's provisions, you may still be entitled to warranty claims as long as you can prove that the missed service or the failure to carry out a service according to the manufacturer's provisions was not the cause of the fault.

Natural wear and tear to your vehicle is not covered by the ŠKODA warranty. The ŠKODA warranty also does not cover faults to bodywork, installations or conversions provided by third-parties, or vehicle faults caused as a result. The same applies to accessories that are not factory installed and/or delivered.

In addition, this warranty does not apply if the fault was caused by one of the following:

- Unauthorized use, improper handling (e.g. use in racing competitions or overloading), improper care and maintenance or unapproved modification to your vehicle;
- Non-compliance with provisions in the service schedule and the Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions;
- External causes or influences (e.g. accidents, hail, flooding etc.);
- Parts fitted on or in the vehicle, whose use has not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s., or modification of the vehicle in a manner not approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (e.g. tuning);
- Damage caused by you that was not immediately seen to by a specialist garage or was not rectified properly.

It is the customer's responsibility to prove that it was not the cause.

This ŠKODA warranty does not affect the purchaser's statutory rights from materials defect liability from the vehicle vendor and other potential claims from product liability laws.

Mobility warranty and ŠKODA extended warranty

Mobility warranty

The mobility warranty provides a sense of security when travelling in your vehicle.

As part of the mobility warranty, if your car breaks down when you are on the move as a result of an unexpected fault, you can access services to ensure your continued mobility. These services include the following: Breakdown service at the breakdown location and towing to the ŠKODA Service Partner, technical assistance by phone or on-site operation.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, the ŠKODA Service Partner may provide further services as required, such as replacement transportation (bus, train etc.) or a courtesy vehicle etc.

More information regarding terms and conditions for the provision of a mobility warranty for your vehicle can be obtained from your ŠKODA Partner. They will also provide you with detailed terms and conditions for the mobility warranty with respect to your vehicle. In the event that there is no mobility warranty coverage available for your vehicle, you should check with any ŠKODA Service Partner about the possibility of a subsequent agreement.

Note

The mobility warranty is only available for some countries.

Optional ŠKODA extended warranty

If you received a ŠKODA extended warranty when purchasing your new car, the two-year ŠKODA warranty for damages to your ŠKODA vehicle will be extended to your chosen duration or until the specified mileage limit has been reached, whichever occurs first.

The previously mentioned paint warranty and the warranty against rust perforation are unaffected by the extended warranty.

Detailed conditions for the extended warranty are included in the extended warranty terms and conditions, which your ŠKODA Partner will have given to you upon purchasing your new car.

Note

The mobility warranty and optional ŠKODA extended warranty are only available for some countries.

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
ACC	Adaptive cruise control
AHL	Adaptive headlights
TCS	Traction control
CO ₂ in g/km	discharged quantity of carbon dioxide in grams per driven kilometre
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
DSR	Active driver-steering recommendation
EDL	Electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
EU	European Union
HBA	Hydraulic brake assist
HHC	Uphill start assist
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
MG	Manual gearbox
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbocharging and common rail injection system
TSA	Trailer stabilisation
TSI	Petrol engine with turbocharging and direct injection

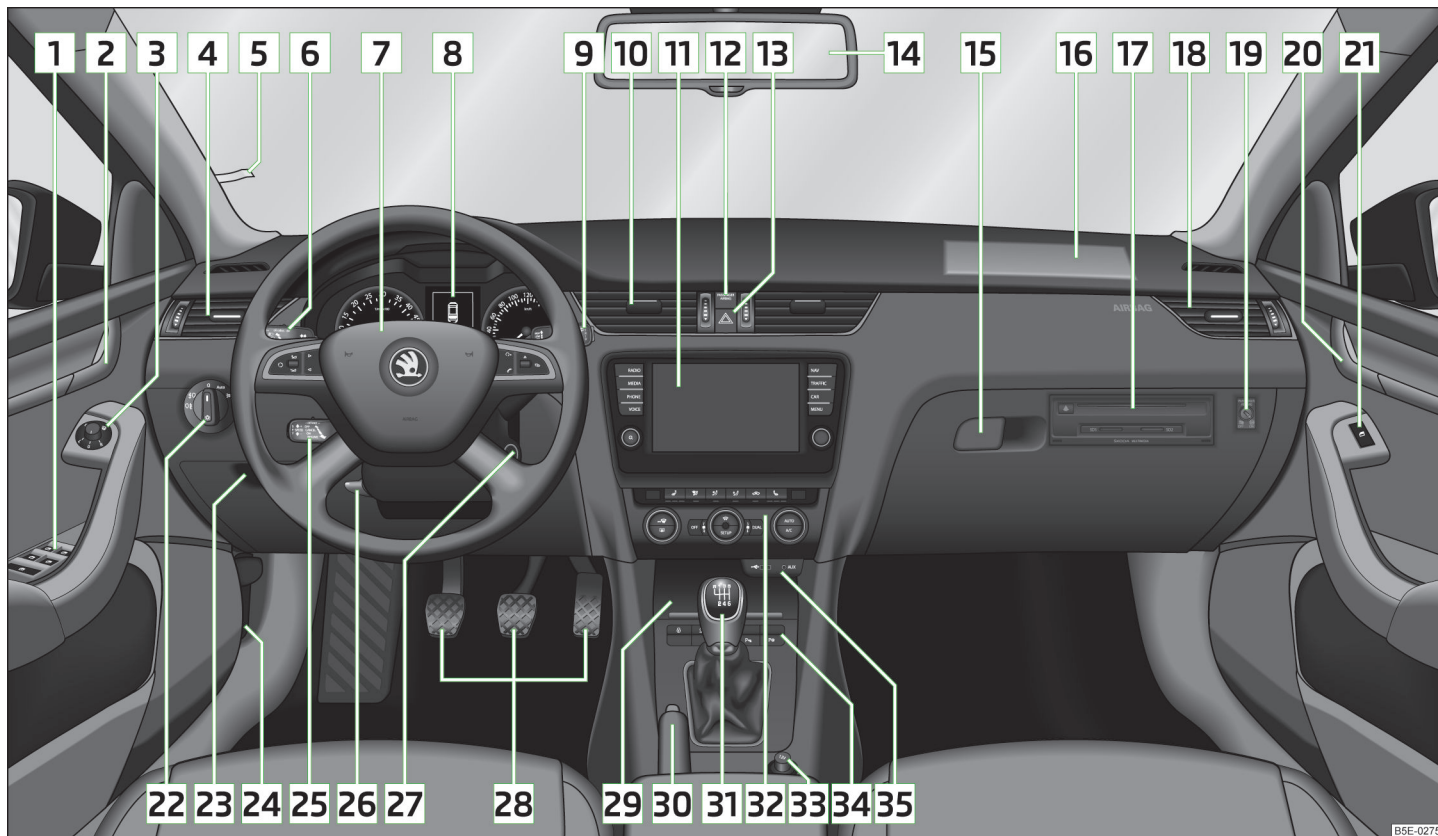


Fig. 1 Cockpit

Using the system

Cockpit

Overview

1	Electrical power windows	47	17	CD/DVD drive and memory card slot (in the passenger-side storage compartment) » <i>owner's manual for the Infotainment radio and/or navigation</i>	
2	Door opening lever	40	18	Air outlet vent	107
3	Electric exterior mirror adjustment	69	19	Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment)	191
4	Air outlet vent	107	20	Door opening lever	40
5	Parking ticket holder	80	21	Power window in the front passenger door	48
6	Operating lever:		22	Light switch	55
	> Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher	56	23	Storage compartment on the driver's side	80
	> Speed regulating system	146		Fuse box (behind the storage compartment on the driver's side)	252
	> Activating the menu item wizard	32	24	Bonnet release lever	217
7	Steering wheel:		25	Operating lever for adaptive cruise control	151
	> With horn		26	Lever for adjusting the steering wheel	118
	> With driver's front airbag	187	27	Ignition lock	120
	> with buttons for the operation of the information system	26	28	Pedals	126
	> With buttons for the Infotainment Control » <i>Infotainment Manual, chapter Device Operation</i>		29	Storage compartment / Phone box » <i>Infotainment Manual, chapter Phone box</i>	
8	Instrument cluster	11	30	Handbrake lever	125
9	Operating lever:		31	Depending on equipment fitted:	
	> Windscreen wiper and wash system	65		> Gearshift lever (manual gearbox)	126
	> Multifunction display	29		> Selector lever (automatic gearbox)	127
	> Information system	32	32	Depending on equipment fitted:	
10	Air outlets in the central part of the dash panel	107		> Operating controls for the heating	108
11	Infotainment » <i>owner's manual for the Infotainment radio or navigation</i>			> Operating controls for the air conditioning system	110
12	Warning light for the deactivated front seat passenger airbag	191		> Operating controls for Climatronic	112
13	Button for hazard warning light system	61	33	Depending on equipment fitted:	
14	Interior rear-view mirror	69		> 12-Volt power socket	84
15	Storage compartment on the front passenger side	87		> Cigarette lighter	83
16	Front passenger airbag	187	34	Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted:	
				>  Central locking system	39
				>  START STOP	158
				>  Traction control TCS	138
				>  Electronic Stability Control ESC	137
				>  Selection of driving mode	161
				>  Park Assist	142 ▶

-  Parking aid _____ 140
 -  Tyre inflation pressure calibration _____ 231
- 35** Depending on equipment fitted:
- USB/AUX input » *Infotainment Manual*, chapter *USB/AUX Inputs*
 - MEDIA IN input » *Infotainment Manual*, chapter *MEDIA IN input*

Note

The position of some of the controls on right-hand drive models may differ from that shown in » [Fig. 1](#). The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models. ■

Instruments and warning lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview	11
Revolutions counter	12
Display	12
Speedometer	12
Coolant temperature gauge	13
Fuel gauge	13
Counter for distance driven	14
	14
Viewing the charge level vehicle battery	14
Auto-check control	14

Component protection

If the message **SAFE CP** appears in the instrument cluster display, the component protection for the instrument cluster is active. Further information » [page 202](#), *Component protection*.

Fault display

If there is a fault in the instrument cluster, the following message will appear in the display.

 **Error: instrument cluster. Workshop!**

 **COMBIINSTRUM_WORKSHOP**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

¹⁾ During the journey, the speed can be displayed in a different unit (mph or km/h) in addition to the tachometer display.

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety.
- Never operate the button **6** in the instrument cluster » [Fig. 2](#) on page 11 while driving, only when the vehicle is stationary!

Overview

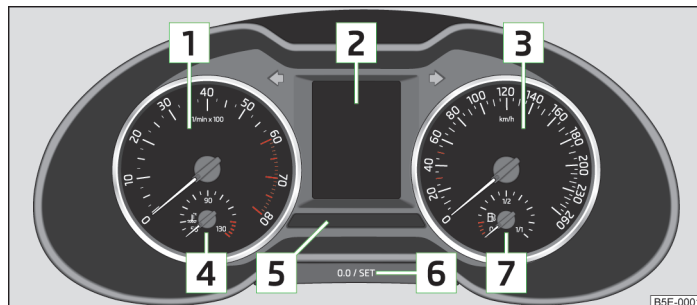


Fig. 2 Instrument cluster

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 11.**

- 1** Revolutions counter with warning lights » [page 12](#)
- 2** Display » [page 12](#)
 - With counter for distance driven » [page 14](#)
 - With service interval display » [page 33](#)
 - With digital clock » [page 14](#)
 - With information system » [page 26](#)
 - With control symbols » [page 21](#)
- 3** Speedometer¹⁾ with warning lights » [page 12](#)
- 4** Coolant temperature gauge » [page 13](#)

- 5 Bar with warning lights » page 15
- 6 Button for:
 - Set hours/minutes » page 14
 - Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval » page 33
 - Resetting Service Interval Display » page 33
 - Reset daily trip counter » page 14
 - Charge level indicator » page 14
- 7 Fuel gauge » page 13

Revolutions counter



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 11.

The red scale of the revolution counter **1** » Fig. 2 on page 11 indicates the range in which the system begins to limit the engine speed. The system automatically restricts the engine speed to a steady limit.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or select mode **D** on the automatic gearbox.

Follow the recommended gear to prevent engine speeds that are too high or too low » page 27.

Display

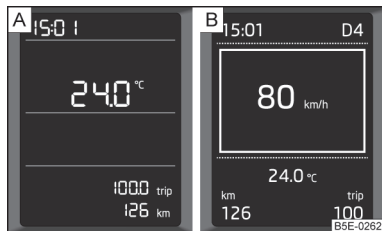


Fig. 3
Display types



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 11.

The instrument cluster can have one of the following types of display » Fig. 3.

- A Segment display
- B MAXI DOT display.

Note

Depending on vehicle equipment, the MAXI DOT display can be either monochromatic "(black and white)" or color.

Speedometer



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 11.

Warning against excessive speeds

An audible warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h¹⁾. The audible warning signal is switched off when the vehicle speed falls below 120 km/h.

¹⁾ This function only applies to certain countries.

Coolant temperature gauge



Fig. 4
Coolant temperature gauge



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 11.

The coolant temperature gauge » Fig. 4 only operates when the ignition is switched on.

Cold range

If the pointer is still in the left area of the scale, this indicates that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads. This prevents possible damage to the engine.

The operating range

The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the mid-range of the scale. At very high ambient temperatures or heavy engine loads, the pointer may move even further to the right.

High temperature range

If the pointer reaches the red area of the scale, the coolant temperature is too high. Further information » page 22.



CAUTION

Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.

Fuel gauge

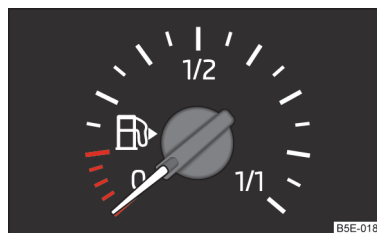


Fig. 5
Fuel gauge



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 11.

The fuel gauge » Fig. 5 only operates if the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 50 litres. If the amount of fuel reaches the reserve area (the pointer reaches the red scale range), the indicator symbol illuminates  to » page 25.



CAUTION

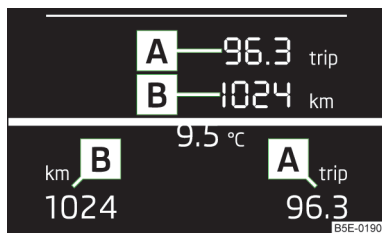
Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.



Note

- After filling up, it can occur that during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, driving downhill and climbing a steep hill) the fuel gauge indicates approx. a fraction less. When stopping or during less dynamic driving, the fuel gauge displays the correct fuel level again. This is not a fault.
- The arrow ► next to the icon  within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right side of the vehicle.

Counter for distance driven



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 11.

Daily trip counter (trip)

The daily trip counter » Fig. 6 shows the distance driven since the time the counter was last reset - in steps of 100 m.

Reset daily trip counter

- Briefly press the button » Fig. 2 on page 11.

Odometer

The odometer » Fig. 6 displays the total distance the vehicle has travelled.

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 11.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press and hold the button » Fig. 2 on page 11 until the **Time** is shown in the display.
- Release the button , and the system switches to the time setting function.
- Press the button again and set the hours.
- Wait around 4 seconds - the system switches to the minutes setting.
- Press the button again and set the minutes.

The time can also be set in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Device settings*.

Viewing the charge level vehicle battery

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 11.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Press and hold the button » Fig. 2 on page 11 until the **Battery status** or **BATTERY SOC** is shown in the display.
- Release the button - the current charge level of the vehicle battery is displayed in %.

Auto-check control

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 11.

Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on.

Error messages and/or other information are displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Some messages are displayed simultaneously with the warning lights » page 15 or warning icons in the display » page 21.

While the operational faults remain unrectified, the messages are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols or continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

Symbol	Meaning
	Warning
	Danger

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » page 61. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.

Warning lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

 Automatic Transmission	16
 Handbrake	16
 Brake system	16
 Seat belt warning light	17
 Power steering	17
 Traction Control System (ASR)	17
 Traction control system (TCS) off	18
 Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	18
 Antilock brake system (ABS)	18
 Rear fog light	19
 Exhaust inspection system	19
 Glow plug system (diesel engine)	19
 Engine performance check (petrol engine)	19
 Security Systems	19
 Tyre inflation pressure	20
 Brake linings	20
 Lane following system (Lane Assist)	20
 Turn signal system	20
 Trailer turn signal lights	20
 Fog lights	21
 Cruise control system	21
 Selector lever lock	21
 Main beam	21

The warning lights indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights illuminate briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go out a few seconds after switching on the ignition.

The condition of some features and systems is shown by the warning icons on the display » [page 21](#).

The warning lights are at the following locations in the instrument cluster » [Fig. 2](#) on [page 11](#).

➤ Revolutions counter [1](#)

➤ Speedometer [3](#)

➤ Bar with warning lights [5](#)

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning lights and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » [page 61](#). The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » [page 215](#), *Engine compartment*.

Automatic Transmission



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 15.

The warning lights   indicate a fault or the state of the automatic gearbox.

Warning light	Message	Meaning and Action
	 Error: gearbox. Reverse gear not available.  GEARBOX ERROR REV_ GEAR NOT AVAIL	Fault in the automatic gearbox, the reverse cannot be appealed. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.
	 Error: gearbox  GEARBOX ERROR	Fault in the automatic gearbox. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.
	 Gearbox overheated.  GEARBOX OVERHEATED	The temperature of the automatic gearbox clutches is too high.  do not continue to drive! Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and wait until the indicator  goes out – risk of gearbox damage! You can continue your journey as soon as the light goes out. If the warning indicator does not go out, do not continue driving. Seek help from a specialist garage.
	 Gearbox overheated. Stop! Owner's manual!  STOP VEHICLE GEARBOX OVERHEAT	The temperature of the automatic gearbox clutches is too high.  do not continue to drive! Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and wait until the indicator  goes out – risk of gearbox damage! If the warning indicator does not go out, do not continue driving. Seek help from a specialist garage.
	 Gearbox faulty. Workshop!  GEARBOX FAULTY WORKSHOP	Fault in the automatic gearbox. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Handbrake



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 15.

The warning light  comes on if the handbrake is applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 5 km/h while the handbrake is still on.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

-  **Release the handbrake!**
-  **RELEASE HANDBRAKE**

Brake system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 15.

If the warning light  lights up, the brake fluid level in the brake system is too low.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

-  **Brake fluid: owner's manual!**
-  **BRAKE FLUID PLEASE CHECK**

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » [page 223](#) » .

If the warning light  lights up together with the warning light , there is a problem with the ABS.

WARNING

- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » [page 61](#). The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- If the warning light  is displayed simultaneously with warning light  » [page 18](#),  *Antilock brake system (ABS)*,  **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance - risk of accident!

Seat belt warning light

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 15.**

The warning light  comes on after the ignition is switched on as a reminder for the driver and front passenger to fasten the seat belt.

The warning light  goes out if the driver or front passenger has fastened their seat belt.

If the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt and the vehicle speed is more than 30 km/h, the warning light  flashes and you will hear an acoustic signal.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next approx. 2 seconds, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light  lights up permanently.

Further information » [page 180](#), *Seat belts*.

Power steering

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 15.**

If the warning light  lights up, this indicates a partial failure of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light  lights up, this indicates a complete failure of the power steering and the steering assist has failed (significantly higher steering forces). Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Further information » [page 119](#), *Power steering*.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light  comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light should go out after driving a short distance. If, after starting the engine again and a short drive, the yellow warning light  does not go out, there is a fault in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Traction Control System (ASR)

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 15.**

If your vehicle is equipped with the ESC system, the TCS is part of the ESC » [page 137](#).

The warning light **flashes**  to show that the ASR is currently operating.

If the warning light  **illuminates**, there is a fault in the ASR.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Error: traction control**

 **ASR ERROR**

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light  comes on after starting the engine, the TCS may be switched off for technical reasons.

➤ Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light  does not illuminate after you switch the engine back on, the ASR is fully functional again.

Further information » [page 137](#), *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* and » [page 138](#), *Traction Control System (TCS)*.

Note

If the vehicle battery has been disconnected and then reconnected, the indicator light  comes on after switching on the ignition. If the indicator light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means that there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Traction control system (TCS) off



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 15.

If the warning light  is lit, the TCS is off.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Traction control (ASR) deactivated.**

 **ASR OFF**

Further information » [page 138](#), *Traction Control System (TCS)*.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 15.

The warning light  **flashes** to show that the ESC is currently operating.

If the warning light  **illuminates**, there is a fault in the ESC.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Error: stabilisation control (ESC)**

 **ESC ERROR**

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light  comes on after starting the engine, the ESC system may be switched off for technical reasons.

» Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the indicator light  does not illuminate after you switch the engine back on, the ESR is fully functional again.

Further information » [page 137](#), *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)*.

Note

If the vehicle battery has been disconnected and then reconnected, the indicator light  comes on after switching on the ignition. If the indicator light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means that there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Antilock brake system (ABS)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 15.

If the warning light  lights up, there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Error: ABS**

 **ABS ERROR**

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Further information » [page 138](#), *Antilock Braking System (ABS)*.

WARNING

- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » [page 61](#). The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- If the warning light  is displayed simultaneously with warning light , **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Rear fog light



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 15.

The warning light  comes on when the rear fog light is switched on.

Further information » [page 60](#), *Rear fog light*.

Exhaust inspection system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 15.

If the warning light  lights up, there is a fault in the exhaust inspection system. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Glow plug system (diesel engine)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 15.

The warning light  comes on after the ignition has been switched on. Once the light has gone out, the engine can be started immediately.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the warning light  **does not** come on at all or **lights up continuously**.

If the warning light  begins to **flash** while driving, a fault exists in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

EPC Engine performance check (petrol engine)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 15.

If the warning light  lights up, there is a fault in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.



Security Systems



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 15.

Fault with airbag system

When the warning light  lights up and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display, there is a fault with the airbag system.

M Error: airbag

S AIRBAG ERROR

The functionality of the airbag system is monitored automatically even if one of the airbags is switched off.

One of the airbags or a belt tensioner has been disabled by the diagnostic tool

➤ The warning light  lights up for approx. 4 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes again for approx. 12 seconds.

➤ The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M Airbag/ belt tensioner deactivated.

S AIRBAG/ BELT TENSIONER OFF

The front passenger airbag has been disabled with the key switch

➤ The warning light  comes on for about 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

➤ The warning light **OFF** in the display **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON/OFF** in the middle of the dash panel lights up after switching on the ignition » [page 191](#).

ProActive passenger protection

When the warning light  lights up and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display, there is a fault with the airbag system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

M Proactive passenger protection not available.

S PROACTIVE PASSENGER PROTECT NOT AVAIL

or

M Proactive passenger protection: funct. restricted.

S LIMITED PROACTIVE PASSENGER PROTECT

! WARNING

If there is a fault in the safety system, have it checked immediately by a specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk of the systems not being activated in the event of an accident.

🔊 Tyre inflation pressure



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 15.

The warning light 🔊 lights up, if there is a substantial drop in inflation pressure in one of the tyres. Check and adjust the pressure in all tyres » page 228.

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

If the warning light 🔊 flashes, there is a fault in the system.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Further information » page 231, *Tyre control display*.

i Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light 🔊 comes on after switching on the ignition. If the warning light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

🔧 Brake linings



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 15.

If the indicator light 🔧 is lit, the brake pads are worn.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

🔊 Check brake wear!

🔊 BRAKE PADS PLEASE CHECK

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.



Lane following system (Lane Assist)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 15.

The warning lights 🚦 🚦 indicates the state of the Lane Assist system.

Further information » page 164, *Lane Assist*.



Turn signal system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 15.

Either the left 🔄 or right 🔄 indicator light flashes depending on the position of the control lever.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate. This does not apply when towing a trailer.

Switching off the hazard warning light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Further information » page 56, *Turn signal and main beam*.



Trailer turn signal lights



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 15.

If the warning light 🔄 flashes, the trailer turn signal lights are turned on.

If a trailer is hitched and the warning light 🔄 is not flashing, one of the trailer turn signal lights has failed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display, for example.

🔊 Trailer: check left turn signal!

🔊 TRAILER TURN SIG_ CHECK LEFT

The trailer must be unhitched properly » page 169, *Towing a trailer*.

Fog lights



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 15.

The warning light  comes on when the fog lights are operating.

Further information » [page 59](#), *Fog lights*.

Cruise control system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 15.

The warning light  comes on when the cruise control is active.

Further information » [page 146](#), *Cruise Control System*.

Selector lever lock



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 15.

If the warning light  lights up, operate the brake pedal.

Further information » [page 127](#), *Modes and use of selector lever*.

Main beam



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 15.

The warning light  comes on when the main beam is selected or when the headlight flasher is operated.

Further information » [page 56](#), *Turn signal and main beam*.

Warning icons in the display



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

■	 Rear seat belt warning	22
	 Alternator	22
	 Coolant	22
	 Engine oil pressure	23
	 Engine oil level	23
	 Lamp failure	24
	 Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine)	24
	 Windscreen washer fluid level	24
■	 Fuel reserve	25
	 Headlight assist	25
	 START-STOP-system	25
	 Ice warning	25
	 Water in the fuel filter (diesel engine)	25

The warning icons indicate the status of certain functions or faults.

The warning icons are indicated in the display of the instrument cluster » [page 12](#).

- After switching on the ignition, some warning icons illuminate briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning icons go out a few seconds after switching on the Ignition.

Depending on the meaning of the warning icon, the icon  or  will also illuminate in the bar with the warning lights [5](#) » [Fig. 2](#) on page 11.

Some warning icons can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the instrument cluster display.

- The status of some features and systems is shown by the warning lights » [page 15](#).

Symbol	Meaning
	Warning
	Danger

While the operational faults remain unrectified, the messages are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols  or  continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

On vehicles with a colour MAXI DOT display some warning icons in the display are in colour.

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning icons and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » [page 61](#). The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » [page 215](#), *Engine compartment*.

Rear seat belt warning

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on [page 21](#).

-  A rear seat belt is not fastened
-  A rear seat belt is fastened

The warning icons  or  come on after the ignition has been switched on.

When the seat belt is fastened/unfastened, the particular icon lights up briefly and indicates the current belt status!

Further information » [page 180](#), *Seat belts*.

Alternator

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on [page 21](#).

The warning icon  lights up if the vehicle battery is not charged when the engine is running.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

If the icon  (cooling system fault) comes on in addition to the icon  when driving, stop the vehicle immediately and switch off the engine - risk of engine damage!

Coolant

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on [page 21](#).

Coolant level too low

If the coolant level is too low, the warning icon  lights up and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

 Check coolant! Owner's manual!

 ENGINE COOLANT PLEASE CHECK

- > Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the coolant level » [page 222](#).
- > If the coolant level is too low, add coolant to the reservoir » [page 222](#).
- > If, after adding coolant and switching on the ignition, the warning icon  disappears, you can continue your journey.
- > If the coolant level is within the specified range, but the warning icon  is still lit, check the fuse for the radiator fan and replace it if necessary » [page 254](#), *Fuses in the engine compartment*.
- > If the coolant level and fan fuse are in order, but the warning icon  is still lit,  **do not continue your journey!**
- > Seek help from a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

■ If the coolant temperature is too high, the warning icon  lights up and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

 Engine overheat. Stop! Owner's manual!

 ENGINE OVERHEAT STOP

- > Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.
- > Wait until the coolant temperature gauge pointer returns to the operating range » [page 13](#).
- > Continue your journey only after the warning icon  has disappeared.

! WARNING

- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » [page 61](#). The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- Carefully open the coolant expansion bottle. If the engine is hot, the cooling system is pressurized - risk of scalding! It is therefore best to allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap.
- Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may switch itself on automatically even if the ignition is off.

Engine oil pressure



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 21.

When the warning icon  flashes, the engine oil pressure is too low.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M Oil pressure: Stop! Owner's manual!

S STOP VEHICLE OIL PRESSURE

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the engine oil » [page 220](#), *Checking the oil level*.

Even if the oil level is correct, **do not drive any further** if the warning icon  is flashing! Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » [page 61](#). The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.



Engine oil level



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 21.

Engine oil level too low

If the warning icons  and  are lit, the engine oil level is too low.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M Oil level: top up oil!

S TOP UP OIL

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the engine oil » [page 220](#).

The warning icon will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning icon will come on again after driving about 100 km.

Engine oil level too high

If the warning icons  and  are lit in conjunction with the following message on the display, the engine oil level is too high.

M Reduce oil level!

S OIL LEVEL TOO HIGH

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the engine oil » [page 220](#).

Engine oil level sensor

If the warning icons  and  are lit in conjunction with the following message on the display, the engine oil level sensor is defective.

M Oil sensor: workshop!

S OIL SENSOR WORKSHOP

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

WARNING

- Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil ! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » [page 61](#). The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.

Lamp failure

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 21.

The warning icon  comes on if a bulb is faulty.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display, for example.

-  Check right dipped headlight beam!
-  DIPPED HEADLIGHT CHECK RIGHT

Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine)

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 21.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

If the warning icon  illuminates, soot has accumulated in the diesel particulate filter.

To clean the diesel particulate filter, and where traffic conditions permit » , drive for at least 15 minutes or until the warning icon  goes out as follows.

- 4 or gear 5 engaged (automatic gearbox: Position D/S).
- Vehicle speed at least 70 km/h.
- Engine speed between 1800-2500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning icon  goes out.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning icon  does not go out and the warning icon  begins to flash.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

-  Diesel particulate filter: owner's manual!
-  DIESEL PM FILTER OWNER MANUAL

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

WARNING

- The diesel particle filter achieves very high temperatures. Therefore do not park in areas where the hot filter can come into direct contact with dry grass or other combustible materials – there is the risk of fire!
- Always adjust your speed to suit weather, road, region and traffic conditions. The recommendations indicated by the warning light must not tempt you to disregard the national regulations for road traffic.

CAUTION

- As long as the warning icon  lights up, you must take into account an increased fuel consumption and in certain circumstances a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with an increased sulphur content can considerably reduce the life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with a high sulphur content.

Note

- We encourage you to avoid constant short journeys. This will improve the combustion process of the soot particles in the diesel particulate filter.
- If the engine is turned off during the filter cleaning process or shortly afterwards, the cooling fan may turn on automatically for a few minutes.

Windscreen washer fluid level

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 21.

If the windscreen washer fluid level is too low, the warning icon  comes on. ▶

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

-  **Top up washer fluid!**
-  **WASHER FLUID PLEASE TOP UP**

Top up with liquid » [page 218](#), *Windscreen washer system*.

Fuel reserve

-  First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 21.

If the warning icon  comes on, there is a fuel reserve of under about 7 litres left. The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

-  **Please refuel. Range: ... km**
-  **PLEASE REFUEL**

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

Note

The text in the display goes out after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Headlight assist

-  First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 21.

The warning icon  is lit when the headlight assist is activated.

Further information » [page 58](#), *Headlight assist*.

START-STOP-system

-  First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 21.

The warning icons   indicate the state of the START-STOP system.

Further information » [page 158](#), *START-STOP*.

Ice warning

-  First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 21.

The warning icon  draws your attention to the risk of ice.

Further information » [page 27](#), *Outside temperature*.

Water in the fuel filter (diesel engine)

-  First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 21.

The fuel filter with water separator, filters out dirt and water from the fuel.

If too much water is present in the separator, the following information appears on the instrument cluster display.

MAXI DOT display.

The indicator symbol  illuminates.

-  **Water in fuel filter. Owner's manual!**

Segment display

-  **WATER IN FUEL FILTER**

CAUTION

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Using the information system	26
Outside temperature	27
Gear recommendation	27
Door, luggage compartment or bonnet warning	28
Eco tips	28
Compass point display	28

The information system provides the driver with alerts and messages about individual vehicle systems. These alerts and messages appear in the instrument cluster display [\[2\]](#) » [Fig. 2](#) on page 11 (hereafter only in the display).

The information system provides the following information.

- » Outside temperature » [page 27](#).
- » Recommended gear » [page 27](#).

- » Door, boot lid and bonnet warning » [page 28](#).
- » Eco tips » [page 28](#).
- » Compass display » [page 28](#).
- » Driving data (multifunction display) » [page 29](#).
- » Warning against excessive speeds » [page 31](#).
- » Data relating to the Maxi DOT display » [page 32](#).
- » To the lap timer function (stopwatch) » [page 32](#).
- » Service interval display » [page 33](#).
- » Auto Check Control » [page 14](#).
- » Warning icons » [page 21](#).
- » Traffic sign recognition » [page 166](#).
- » Fatigue detection » [page 168](#).
- » Selector lever positions for an automatic gearbox » [page 127](#).
- » Information and alerts in the Assist systems » [page 137](#).

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Using the information system

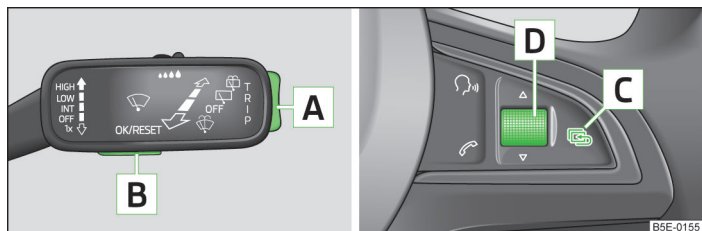


Fig. 7 Buttons / dial: on the operating lever / on the multifunction steering wheel

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 26.

Some functions of the information system can be operated using the buttons on the operating lever » [Fig. 7](#) or on the multifunction steering wheel » [Fig. 7](#).

Description of the operation

Button / wheel » Fig. 7	Operation	Action
A	Select data	Briefly push up or down
	Set data values	Briefly push up or down
	Open main menu in the MAXI DOT display	Press and hold button
B	Show data	Press briefly
	Confirm data	Press briefly
C	Open main menu in the MAXI DOT display	Press and hold button
	to go back one level in the menu of the MAXI DOT display	Press briefly
D	Select data	Turn upwards or downwards
	Set data values	Turn upwards or downwards
	Show data	Press briefly
	Confirm data	Press briefly

Outside temperature



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 26.

The current outside temperature is shown in the display.

If the outside temperature drops below +4 °C while driving, the following symbol ❄ (warning signal for ice on the road) appears before the temperature indicator and an audible signal will sound.

If the outside temperature is less than +4 °C when the ignition is turned on, the following symbol ❄ appears in the display and an acoustic signal sounds.

After pressing the switch **B** or the adjustment wheel **D** » Fig. 7 on page 26, the function shown last is indicated.

! WARNING

Even at temperatures around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface! Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road.

Gear recommendation

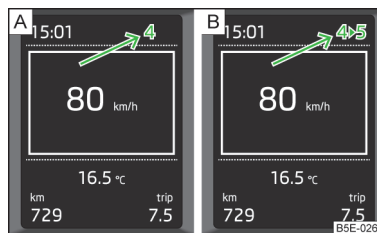


Fig. 8
Information on the selected gear / Gear recommendation



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 26.

Information on the selected gear

The currently engaged gear » Fig. 8 is shown in the display **A**.

Recommended gear

In order to minimise the fuel consumption, a recommendation for shifting into another gear is indicated in the display.

When the system determines that a change in gear is required, the arrow symbol and the recommended gear appear next to the current gear indication ►» Fig. 8 - B.

For instance, if 4 ► 5 appears in this display, this means it is recommended that you shift from 4th into 5th gear.

The gear recommendation is intended only for vehicles with a manual transmission or for vehicles with an automatic transmission in manual shift mode (Tiptronic).

! WARNING

The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.



For the sake of the environment

Correct shifting up has the following advantages.

- It helps to reduce fuel consumption.
- It reduces the operating noise.
- It protects the environment.
- It benefits the durability and reliability of the engine.

Door, luggage compartment or bonnet warning



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 26.

If at least one door is open, or the boot or bonnet is **open**, the display indicates the relevant open door or boot/bonnet.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

Eco tips



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 26.

To minimise fuel consumption, fuel economy tips can appear in the display¹⁾.

Eco tips are indicated next to the letters **ECO-TIP**.

For instance, if the air-condition is on and a window is open, the following message appears **ECO TIP Air conditioning switched on: close windows**.

Eco tips display must be activated in the Infotainment ► *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

Compass point display



Fig. 9
Compass display



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 26.

For vehicles with a factory fitted navigation system, an abbreviation for each point of the compass (depending on the current direction of travel) is shown in the display►» Fig. 9.

The compass point display only operates when the ignition is switched on.



Note

The direction indicator can be displayed at the top or bottom of the screen displayed in response to further information.

¹⁾ Applies to vehicles using the MAXI DOT display.

Driving data (Multifunction display)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Memory	29
Information overview	29
Warning at excessive speeds	31

The multifunction display only operates if the ignition is switched on.

After the ignition is switched on, the function that was last selected before switching off the ignition is displayed.

Individual menu items can be shown or hidden in the Infotainment » Bedienungsanleitung Infotainment, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Note

In some national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measurement.

Memory



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 29.

The multifunction display is equipped with three automatic memories.

The display of the selected memory varies depending on vehicle equipment.

Since start (MAXI DOT display) or "1" (segment display)

The memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off.

New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Long-term (MAXI DOT display) or "2" (segment display)

The memory gathers driving information from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving or 9999 kilometres driven.

The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts all over again.

Since refuel (MAXI DOT display) or "3" (segment display)

The memory gathers driving information since the last refuelling.

The memory is erased automatically the next time you fill up.

Select memory

➤ Select the corresponding element of the travel data » [page 26](#), *Using the information system*.

Confirm the element again to switch between the individual memories.

Resetting

➤ Select the corresponding element of the travel data » [page 26](#), *Using the information system*.

➤ Select the desired memory.

➤ Press and hold button  or adjustment wheel  » [Fig. 7](#) on page 26.

The following values of the selected memory are set to zero.

➤ Average fuel consumption.

➤ Distance driven.

➤ Average speed.

➤ Driving time



Note

Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

Information overview



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 29.

The amount of information displayed may differ depending on the equipment. ▶

Range

The range indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the level of fuel in the tank and the same style of driving as before.

The display is shown in steps of 10 km. After lighting up of the warning icon  the display is shown in steps of 5 km.

The fuel consumption over the last 50 km is used to calculate the range. The range can increase if you drive in a more fuel-efficient manner.

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption¹⁾ is calculated since the last time the memory was erased.

If you wish to determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period of time, you must set the memory at the start of the new measurement to zero » [page 29](#).

After erasing the memory, no fuel consumption data will appear for the first 100 m driven.

The indicated information is updated continuously while you are driving.

Current fuel consumption

You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption¹⁾.

The display appears in litres/hour if the vehicle is stationary or driving at a low speed²⁾.

Oil temperature

If the engine oil temperature is in the range 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature is reached.

If the oil temperature is lower than 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C or if a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature is present, — are displayed instead of the oil temperature.

Warning against excessive speeds

Set the speed limit, for example, for the maximum permissible speed in town » [page 31](#).

Traffic sign recognition

The display can show up to three of the following traffic signs simultaneously.

- Speed limits (including additional signs).
- Overtaking prohibited.

Further information » [page 166](#), *Traffic sign recognition*.

Current driving speed

The current speed displayed is identical to the display on the speedometer  » [Fig. 2](#) on [page 11](#).

Average speed

The average speed since the memory was last erased is displayed in km/hour .

To determine the average speed over a certain period of time, set the memory to zero at the start of the measurement » [page 29](#).

After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

The indicated information is updated continuously while you are driving.

Distance travelled

The distance travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

If you want to measure the distance travelled from a particular moment in time on, at this moment, reset the memory by setting the button to zero » [page 29](#).

The maximum distance indicated is 9999 km. The indicator is automatically set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Driving time

The time travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

If you want to measure the time travelled from a particular moment in time on, at this moment, reset the memory by setting the button to zero » [page 29](#).

The maximum distance indicated is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The indicator is automatically set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Convenience consumers

There, the total consumption of all consumer comfort in l / h is displayed. ►

¹⁾ The units for the displayed consumption are set in the Infotainment » Bedienungsanleitung Infotainment, chapter *Device settings*.

²⁾ On some models in certain countries, the display appears in --, - kilometres/litres if the vehicle is stationary.

Together with the consumption display, a list of three convenience consumers with the highest consumption is also displayed.

For more information » [page 133](#) and » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (press **CAR**).

Refuelling amount¹⁾

After the consumption of about 10 litres of fuel from the fully refuelled tank, an amount of fuel is displayed in l. This amount can now be **safely** refilled.

Warning at excessive speeds



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 29.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary

- Select the menu item **Warning at** (MAXI DOT display) or (segment display).
- Activate the speed limit option by confirming this menu item.
- Set the desired speed limit, e.g. 50 km/h.
- Store the speed limit by confirming the set value, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

This allows you to set the speed in 5 km/h intervals.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

- Select the menu item **Warning at** (MAXI DOT display) or (segment display).
- Drive at the desired speed, e.g. 50 km/h.
- Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

If you wish to adjust the set speed limit, you can do so in 5 km/h intervals (e.g. the accepted speed of 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

- Store the speed limit, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

Change or disable speed limit

- Select the menu item **Warning at** (MAXI DOT display) or (segment display).
- By confirming the stored value, the speed limit is disabled.
- By reconfirming, the option to change the speed limit is activated.

If the pre-set speed is exceeded, an acoustic signal appears as a warning tone and a warning message appears in the display.

M Speed ... exceeded.

S SPEED TOO HIGH

The speed limit set mode is stored even after the ignition is switched off and on. After a gap between driving exceeding 2 hours, the pre-set speed limit is deactivated.

MAXI DOT display



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Main menu	32
Lap timer (Stop watch)	32

The MAXI DOT display provides you with information about the **current operating state of your vehicle**. The MAXI DOT display also provides you with data (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle) relating to the Infotainment, multifunctional indicator, and similar.



WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

¹⁾ Only valid for some countries.

Main menu

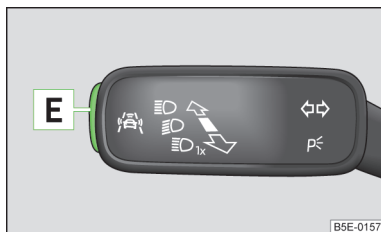


Fig. 10
Operating lever: Button to open
the menu item wizard



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 31.

Operating the MAXI DOT display » page 26.

Main menu points

The following information can be selected (depending on the equipment installed on the vehicle).

- **Driving data** » page 29
- **Assist systems** » page 164, » page 154
- **Navigation** » operating instructions for Infotainment, chapter Navigation system (NAV button)
- **Audio** » operating instructions for Infotainment, chapter Audio (MEDIA button)
- **Telephone** » operating instructions for Infotainment, chapter Communication (PHONE button)
- **Vehicle** » page 14, Auto-check control
- **Lap timer** » page 32

Menu item wizard

In the menu item **Assist systems** the **Front Assist** and the **Lane Assist** can be confirmed and activated or deactivated.

The menu item **Assist systems** in the main menu can also be opened by pressing the button **E** on the control lever » Fig. 10.



Note

If the MAXI DOT display shows warning messages, these messages must be confirmed in order to access the main menu » page 26, *Using the information system*.

Lap timer (Stop watch)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 31.

The Laptimer function offers the possibility of calculating the lap time, for example when driving on a race course. The measured time is shown in the display.

Operation of the lap timer function » page 26, *Using the information system*.

The calculated times are displayed in minutes, seconds and deciseconds.

Activate Laptimer function

- From the main menu of the display select the menu item **Lap timer**.

The following functions are available.

- **Start** - start the timing manually or continue the interrupted measurement
- **Since start** - Start the timer automatically upon start-up
- **Statistics** - Evaluate and reset the measured times

Time measurement

Manually start the measurement

- Select the menu item **Lap timer - Start**.

Start the measurement automatically

- Select the menu item **Lap timer - Since start**. Timing will begin automatically when starting up.

Start timing of next round

- Select the menu item **New lap** during timing.

During timing, information about the fastest and the last lap time are also shown in the display.

Measure split time

- During the timing, select the menu item **Split time**. The split time data is displayed for about 5 seconds in the display.

The split time can be measured repeatedly during a round.

Stop measurement

- During the timing, press the menu item **Stop**.

The time measurement is stopped, the following functions are now available.

- **Continue** - Continue measurement of the current lap time
- **New lap** - Start measurement of the next lap time.

- **Abort lap** - Cancel the timer (the aborted lap time is not stored)
- **Hang up** - End timing (the aborted lap time is stored)

Evaluate recorded times

➤ Select the menu item **Lap timer - Statistics**.

The following information is displayed.

- **Fastest:** - The fastest lap
- **Slowest:** - The slowest lap
- **Average:** - The average lap time
- **Overall time:** - The total of all the lap times

Reset measured times

➤ Select the menu item **Lap timer - Statistics - Reset**.

! WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Only use the Lap timer system when you are in any traffic situation where you have full control over the vehicle.

i Note

- The system allows the measurement of up to 11 lap times.
- The measurement of single lap time is stopped after 99 h, 59 min and 59 sec. After this time has been reached, measuring the new lap starts automatically.
- The measured times cannot be reset individually.
- If the measured times are not reset, then these are stored even after turning off the ignition.

Service interval display

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Service messages	33
Resetting Service Interval Display	34

The service due date is automatically displayed on the display and this information can be displayed manually at any time if necessary.

i Note

- Information is retained in the Service Interval Display even after the vehicle battery is disconnected.
- If the instrument cluster is exchanged after a repair, the correct values must be entered in the counter for the Service Interval Display. This work is carried out by a specialist garage.
- In some national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measurement.
- For more information on the service intervals, see » [page 198](#), *Service intervals*.

Service messages



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 33.

Messages before reaching the scheduled service date

Before reaching the service date, the icon  appears in the display after the ignition is switched on, as well as the following message for example.

M Oil change in ... days

S OIL CHANGE IN ... DAYS

or

M Inspection in ... days

S INSPECT_ IN ...DAYS

The kilometre indicator or the days indicator reduces in steps of 100 km or, where applicable, days until the service due date is reached.

Messages upon reaching scheduled service date

Once the service interval is reached, the icon  appears in the display after the ignition is switched on, as well as the following message for example.

M Oil change now!

S OIL CHANGE NOW

or

M Inspection now!

S INSPECTION NOW

or

- M** Oil change and inspection now!
- S** OIL CHAN_ AND INSPECTION NOW

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the button **[6]** » Fig. 2 on page 11 and hold down until **Service** appears.
- Release the button **[6]**.

The icon  appears in the display, as well as the following message for example.

- M** Service in ... km or ... day(s).
- S** SERVICE IN ... km OR ... DAYS

Resetting Service Interval Display



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 33.

Resetting Service Interval Display

If the variable service interval is set in your vehicle and if the service interval display is reset, the variable service interval is switched to the fixed service interval.

We therefore recommend that the Service Interval Display be reset only by a specialist garage, which will reset the display with a vehicle diagnostic tester.

Reset - oil change service

- Switch off the ignition (for vehicles with the KESSY system all doors as well as the luggage compartment and bonnet flaps must also be shut).
- Press the button **[6]** » Fig. 2 on page 11 and hold down.
- Switch on the ignition, the following message displays.

- M** Reset oil change service?
- S** RESET OIL SERVICE

- Release and then press again the button **[6]**.

Reset - Inspection

- Switch off the ignition (for vehicles with the KESSY system all doors as well as the luggage compartment and bonnet flaps must also be shut).
- Press the button **[6]** » Fig. 2 on page 11 and hold down.
- Switch on the ignition and keep button **[6]** pressed down until the following message displays.

- M** Reset inspection service - are you sure?
- S** RESET SERVICE

- Release and then press again the button **[6]**.



CAUTION

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display could cause problems to the vehicle. ■

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle key	36
Unlocking/locking with the key	36
Unlocking/locking with the remote control	37
Unlocking/locking – KESSY	38
Safe securing system	38
Individual settings	39
Locking/unlocking the vehicle from the inside	39
Child safety lock	40
Opening/closing a door	40

Your car is equipped with a central locking system.

The central locking system allows you to lock and unlock **all** doors, the fuel filler flap and luggage compartment lid at the same time based on the current setting¹⁾.

The safe securing system » [page 38](#) is integrated in the central locking system. Once the car is locked from the outside, the door locks are automatically blocked by the safe securing system » .

The following is true after unlocking¹⁾

- The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.
- The interior light operated via the door contact illuminates.
- The safe securing system is switched off.
- The indicator light in the driver door stops flashing.
- The exterior mirrors are folded back into the driving position ²⁾.
- The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated.

The following is true after locking¹⁾.

- The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- The interior light operated via the door contact goes out.
- The safe securing system is switched on.
- The warning light in the driver door begins flashing.
- The exterior mirrors are folded back into park ²⁾.
- The anti-theft alarm system is activated.

Displaying an error

If the warning light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then lights up for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.



WARNING

- If the car is locked and the safe securing system is activated, there must not be any person in the car as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk of death!
- Locked doors prevent unwanted entry into the vehicle from outside, for example at road crossings.



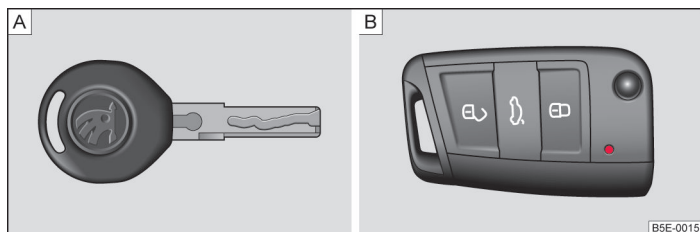
Note

- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.
- Only the driver's door can be unlocked or locked using the key if the central locking system fails » [page 36](#). The other doors and the boot lid can be emergency locked or unlocked.
 - Emergency locking of the door » [page 248](#).
 - Emergency unlocking of the luggage compartment lid » [page 249](#).

¹⁾ Depending on the individual setting » [page 39](#).

²⁾ Applies only if the function is enabled in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (press CAR)*.

Vehicle key



B5E-0015

Fig. 11 Key: without/with remote control

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 35.

Two keys are provided with the vehicle » Fig. 11.

- A** Keys without remote control
- B** Keys with remote control (remote control keys)

The transmitter with the battery is housed in the handle of the remote control key. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle.

The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

The remote control key has a fold-open key bit which can be used for unlocking and locking the car manually and also for starting the engine.

The spare key must be initialised by a specialist garage after the receiver unit is repaired or replaced. Only then can the remote control key be used again.

WARNING

- Always withdraw the key whenever you leave the vehicle – even if it is only for a short time. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. The children might otherwise start the engine or operate electrical equipment (e.g. power windows) – risk of injury!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop! The steering lock might otherwise engage unintentionally – risk of accident!

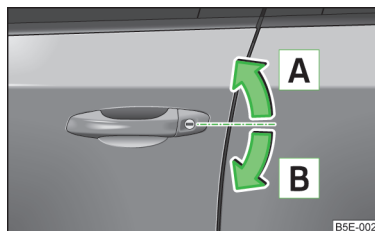
CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than approx. 3 metres away » page 247.

Note

If you lose a key, please contact a specialist garage, who will be able to provide you with a new one.

Unlocking/locking with the key



B5E-0024

Fig. 12
Turning the key for unlocking
and locking the vehicle

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 35.

Unlocking

- Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the direction of arrow **A** » Fig. 12.

On vehicles with remote control, only the driver's door is unlocked.

Locking

- Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the direction of arrow **B** » Fig. 12.

If at least one door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Unlocking/locking with the remote control

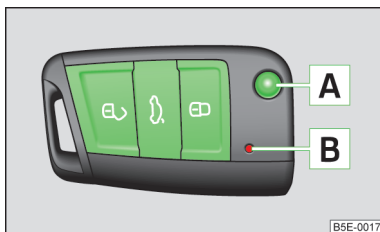


Fig. 13
Remote control key



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 35.

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 13

-  Unlocking the vehicle
-  Locking the vehicle
-  Unlocking the boot lid
- A** Folding out/folding up of the key bit
- B** Warning light

Unlocking

The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safelock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

The seat and mirror are adjusted after the vehicle is unlocked » page 74.

Locking

The turn signal lights flash once as confirmation that the vehicle has been locked.

If the doors or the luggage compartment lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

The current position of the seat and mirror after the vehicle is locked » page 75.

Checking the battery condition

If the red indicator light **B** » Fig. 13 does not flash when you press a button on the remote control key, the battery is empty. Replace the battery » page 247.



WARNING

If the car is locked from the outside and the safelock system is switched on, there must not be any person in the car as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk of death!



CAUTION

- Only operate the remote control when the doors and luggage compartment lid are closed and the vehicle is in your line of sight.
- If the driver door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked using the remote control key.
- The operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by signal interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range.



Note

For vehicles with the anti-theft alarm system, the acoustic signals can additionally also be enabled / disabled when unlocking / locking » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (key CAR)*.

Unlocking/locking - KESSY

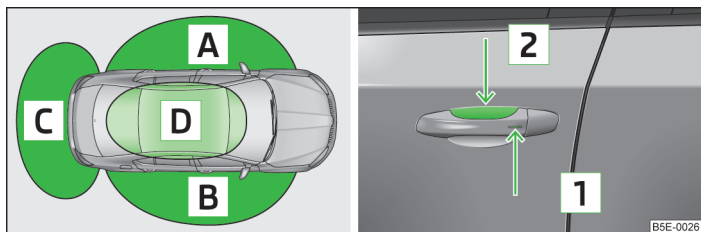


Fig. 14 KESSY: Name of the zones / sensors in the front door handle

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 35.

Unlocking or locking areas

- Front door left
- Front door right
- Luggage compartment lid

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key. The key must be in one of the areas or (about 1.5 meters away from the vehicle) » Fig. 14.

Unlocking

➤ Grab the door handle of the front door or cover the sensor » Fig. 14 with the whole palm of your hand » .

Locking

➤ Touch the sensor » Fig. 14 with your fingers.

On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

Unlocking the boot lid

➤ Press the button in the handle of the boot lid » Fig. 19 on page 44.

Switching off the safelock system

➤ Use your fingers to touch the sensor twice within 2 seconds.

If you cover the sensor at the same time as the sensor » Fig. 14 when unlocking the vehicle, it is not unlocked.

If the vehicle is locked via the sensor , it will not be possible to unlock it again in the following 2 seconds via the sensor - prevents accidental unlocking.

The KESSY system can find the valid key, even if it was left in the front of the vehicle's roof for example » Fig. 14 It is therefore not always necessary to know where the key is.

Always check to see whether the vehicle is locked.

Further information about the KESSY system » page 41.

CAUTION

- Do not use objects which might prevent direct contact between the hand and the grip sensor.
- Some types of gloves can impair the function of the grip sensor.
- After leaving the vehicle, it does not lock automatically, the procedure for locking the vehicle must therefore be observed.
- The gear selector must be located in position **P** when leaving the vehicle¹⁾. Otherwise the vehicle cannot be locked.
- If the battery in the key is weak or discharged, the vehicle may not be unlocked or locked via the KESSY system. In this case, use the emergency unlocking or emergency locking on the driver's door » page 248.

Safe securing system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 35.

The door locks are blocked automatically if the vehicle is locked from the outside. Afterwards, it is not possible to open the doors with the door handle either from the inside or from the outside.

This fact is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after switching on the ignition.

- Check **SAFELOCK! Owner's manual!**
- CHECK SAFELOCK**

¹⁾ Valid for vehicles with automatic gearbox.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on opening lever.

Switching off

The safelock can be switched off by locking twice within 2 seconds.

Switching on

The safelock switches on automatically the next time the vehicle is locked and unlocked.

Switch-on display

The warning light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

Switch-off display

The indicator light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

! WARNING

If the car is locked and the safe securing system activated, no people must remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

i Note

This function only applies to certain countries.

Individual settings

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 35.**

The following functions of the central locking system can be set individually » *owner's manual of Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

Opening a single door

This function makes it possible to only unlock the driver's door. The other doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlocking a vehicle side door

This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side. The other doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlocking the vehicle with the KESY system

This function enables you to unlock all the doors, individual doors, both doors on the left or right vehicle side. The other doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Automatic locking/unlocking

All doors are locked from a speed of around 15 km/h. The button in the handle of the boot lid is deactivated.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. In addition, it is possible for the driver or front passenger to unlock the car by pressing the central locking button @.

The vehicle doors can be unlocked and opened at any time by pulling once on the door opening lever.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle from the inside



Fig. 15
Central locking button



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 35.

If the vehicle was not locked from the outside, you can also unlock or lock it with the button » Fig. 15, even without the ignition being switched on. While a door is opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Locking

» Press @/ » Fig. 15 press.

The symbol @ in the button lights up.

Unlocking

➤ Press  / » Fig. 15 press.

The symbol  in the button is no longer illuminated.

The following applies if your vehicle has been locked using the central locking button.

- It is not possible to open the doors or the luggage compartment lid from the outside (safety feature, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights etc.).
- The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked from the inside in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

! WARNING

- Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – danger to life!
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- If the safelock system is switched on » page 38, the door opening lever and the central locking buttons do not operate.

Child safety lock



Fig. 16
Parental Control: Left rear door

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 35.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Switching on

➤ Turn the slot of the safety lock in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 16 (mirror-inverted on the right-hand door).

Switching off

➤ Turn the slot of the safety lock in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 16 (mirror-inverted on the right-hand door).

Opening/closing a door



Fig. 17 Door handle/door opening lever

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 35.

Opening from the outside

➤ Unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle  » Fig. 17 on the door you wish to open.

Opening from the inside

➤ Pull on door opening lever  of the respective door and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside

➤ Grab the pull handle  and close the door.

WARNING

- Make sure that the door has closed correctly as it can open suddenly while driving – risk of death!
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline – risk of injury!

KESSY

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information message	41
Parking vehicle	41

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

Information message



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 41.

Key in the vehicle

The protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle unlocks the vehicle automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The vehicle, including the boot lid, has been locked.
- ✓ The key with which the vehicle has been locked remains in the vehicle in the zone  » Fig. 14 on page 38.

The turn signal lights flash four times as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked again.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

-  **Key in vehicle.**
-  **KEY IN VEHICLE**

Additionally, on vehicles which are fitted with the anti-theft alarm system, an audible signal sounds.

The system has not found a key

If the system has not found a key in the vehicle, the following message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

-  **Key not found.**
-  **Key not detected. Owner's manual!**
-  **NO KEY**

This can occur if the key is outside the vehicle, the battery in the key is discharged, the key is defective or the electromagnetic field is strongly disturbed.

Fault in KESSY system

If there is a fault in the KESSY system, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster.

-  **Keyless access system faulty.**
-  **KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM FAULTY**

Low voltage of the key battery

If the voltage of the battery in the remote control key is too low, the following message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

-  **Change the key battery!**
-  **KEY BATTERY PLEASE CHANGE**

Change the key battery » page 247!

Parking vehicle



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 41.

If the vehicle is not unlocked within 60 or 90 hours, the sensors in the handle of the driver or front passenger's door are deactivated automatically » Fig. 14 on page 38.

Activation after 60 hours

- Unlock the driver's door using the sensor  » Fig. 14 on page 38.
- Press the handle of the boot lid.
- Unlock the vehicle using the symbol button  on the remote control key.
- Unlocking the driver's door in an emergency » page 248.

Activation after 90 hours

- Unlock the vehicle using the symbol button  on the remote control key.
- Unlocking the driver's door in an emergency » [page 248](#).

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Activating/deactivating	42
Interior monitor and towing protection	43

The anti-theft alarm system increases the level of protection against people seeking to break into the vehicle. The system triggers audible and visual warning signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to only as alarm).

An alarm is triggered when the following monitored areas of the vehicle have a fault.

- Bonnet.
- Boot lid.
- Doors.
- Ignition lock.
- Vehicle inclination » [page 43](#).
- Interior of car » [page 43](#).
- A drop in voltage of the on-board power supply.
- Socket of the factory-fitted towing device » [page 173](#), *Driving with a trailer*.

An alarm is immediately triggered if either of the two battery terminals is disconnected while the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

The alarm is **switched off** by unlocking the vehicle or switching on the ignition.

CAUTION

Before leaving the vehicle, it must be checked that all of the windows, doors and the sliding/tilting roof are locked in order to ensure the full functionality of the anti-theft alarm system.

Note

The working life of the alarm siren is 5 years.

Activating/deactivating



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on [page 42](#).

Activating

The anti-theft alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safelock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

Deactivating

The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated automatically after the vehicle is unlocked. If the vehicle is not opened within 45 seconds, the anti-theft alarm system is automatically activated again.

The alarm system is also deactivated if you unlock the driver door using the key within 45 seconds of locking the vehicle.

Note

When the Vehicle is unlocked using the key on the driver's door, insert the key into the ignition and switch on the ignition in order to deactivate the alarm system.

Interior monitor and towing protection

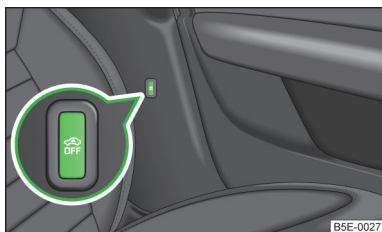


Fig. 18
Button for interior monitor and
towing protection



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 42.

The interior monitor detects movements inside the car or the inclination of the vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

Switching off

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the driver door.
- Press the symbol button  » Fig. 18 on the B-column on the driver's side. The symbol lighting in the button changes  from red to orange.
- Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

The interior monitor and the towing protection are activated automatically after the vehicle is locked.

Deactivate the interior monitor and the towing protection if there is a possibility of the alarm being triggered by movements from (e.g. children or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

! CAUTION

- The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.
- The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked even if the safe securing system is deactivated. The interior monitor is however not activated.

Luggage compartment lid



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening/closing	44
Automatic locking	44



WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the luggage compartment lid. Otherwise, the boot lid might open suddenly when driving even if it was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the luggage compartment lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the luggage compartment lid, it could crack – risk of injury!



CAUTION

If the vehicle was locked before the boot lid was closed, the lid is automatically locked right away as soon as it is closed.



Note

The function of the handle above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or at a speed of 5 km/hour or more for vehicles with central locking. The function is restored after the vehicle stops and the door is opened.

Opening/closing

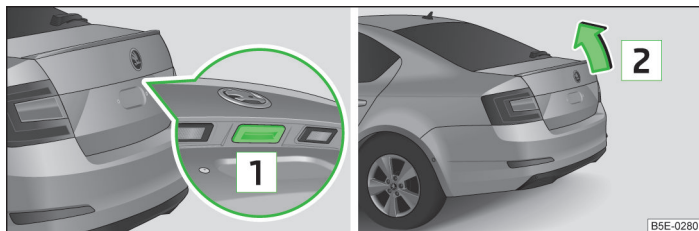


Fig. 19 Boot lid handle/opening the boot lid

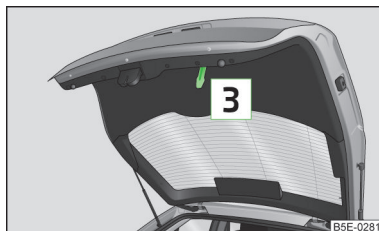


Fig. 20
Handle in the inner panelling of
the boot lid

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 43.

After unlocking, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate.

Opening

➤ Press the handle » Fig. 19 and lift the lid in the direction of the arrow .

Closing

➤ Pull the lid down with handle » Fig. 20 and close with a slight swing.

Automatic locking

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 43.

If the vehicle was locked before the boot lid was closed, the lid is automatically locked right away as soon as it is closed.

The period after which the luggage compartment lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

Delayed locking

If the boot lid was locked using the symbol button on the remote control key, it is possible to open the boot lid within a limited period of time after it has been closed.

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. Therefore, the vehicle must always be locked using the symbol button on the remote control.

Delayed locking can be deactivated by a specialist garage at any time.

Note

More detailed information is available from your authorised ŠKODA Partner. ■

Electric luggage compartment lid (Octavia Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating description	45
Acoustic signals	46
Adjusting/deleting the top lid position	46
Malfunctions	47

Force limiter

The electric luggage compartment lid (hereinafter referred to only as a lid) is equipped with a force limiter. If the lid hits an obstacle when closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds. ►

If you rapidly enter the vehicle during the opening or closing process of the boot lid, the whole vehicle may jerk and as a result the movement of the lid can be interrupted.

Manual operation

Manually opening and closing the lid is only possible in exceptional cases. It must be completed slowly and without sudden movements as close to the centre of the lid as possible » **!**.

! WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the lid open or unlatched, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!

! CAUTION

- The movement of the lid can be stopped by applying an abrupt and quick force against the lid.
- Do not try to close the lid manually during the electrical closing process. Damage can occur to the system of the electric boot lid.
- If the lid is closed manually, it must be ensured that when moving the lid into the lock, pressure is applied to the centre edge of the lid above the ŠKODA logo. Handling the sides of the lid can damage the electric lid.

! CAUTION

- Before opening or closing the lid, check if there are any objects in the opening or closing range which could obstruct the movement (e.g. a load on the roof rack or on the trailer, etc.) – risk of causing damage to the lid!
- Ensure that there is at least 10 cm of clearance above the opened lid (e.g. distance from the garage ceiling). Otherwise, it may happen that the clearance above the opened lid is no longer sufficient after relieving the vehicle of a load (e.g. after unloading) – risk of causing damage to the lid.
- In certain circumstances, if the lid is loaded (e.g. by a thick layer of snow), the opening process of the lid can be interrupted. Remove the load on the lid to re-enable the electrical operation.
- If the lid closes automatically (e.g. under load of snow), you will hear an intermittent beep.

Operating description

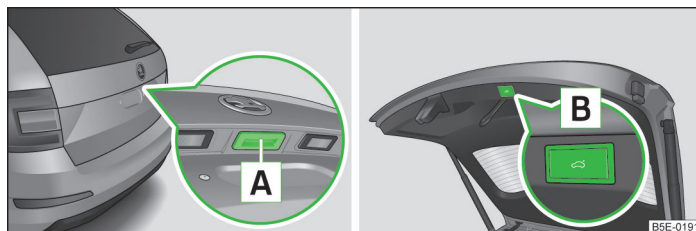


Fig. 21 Lid operation

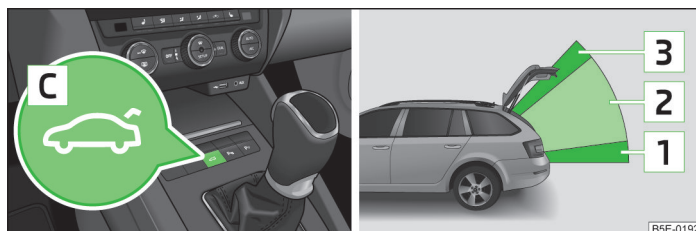


Fig. 22 Lid operation/operating areas



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **! on page 44.**

Control elements

The lid can be operated with the following control elements.

- With the symbol button  on the remote control key (press for about 1 s).
- With the button in the handle **A** on the outer part of the lid » Fig. 21.
- With the button **B** on the inner part of the lid » Fig. 21.
- With the button **C** in the centre console » Fig. 22.

Operating areas

The system distinguishes 3 operating areas where the function of the individual operating elements changes » Fig. 22. The end positions of the lid - fully closed in the secured lock and fully opened - differ as well.

The range of the area **3** changes proportionally, depending on the setting of the top position of the lid » [page 46](#).

If the lid is set in the uppermost position in the area **2**, the area **3** is not active. The range of the area **2** changes proportionally, depending on the setting of the top position of the lid.

Symbol explanation in the operating description

- ☒ Feasible action
- ☐ Non-feasible action
- ↔ Movement in the opposite direction to the previous movement

Lid operation with the handle **A**

Action	Closed Lid	Range			Open Lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	☒	☒	↔	☐	☐
Stop	☐	☒	☒	☒	☐
Closing	☐	☐	↔	☒	☒

The operation of the lid using the handle **A** is only possible when the vehicle is unlocked.

Lid operation with the button **B**

Action	Closed Lid	Range			Open Lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	☐	☒	↔	☐	☐
Stop	☐	☒	☒	☒	☐
Closing	☐	☐	↔	☒	☒

Operating the lid with the button **B** is only possible when the lid is open.

Lid operation with the symbol button on the remote control key and the button **C**

Action	Closed Lid	Range			Open Lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	☒	☒	☒	☐	☐
Stop	☐	☒	☒	☒	☐
Closing	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

When the ignition is switched on, the operation of the lid does not function using the remote control key.

Operating the lid with the button **C** does not work if the vehicle was locked from the outside.

Operating the lid with the symbol button  on the remote control key and the button **C** does not work when a trailer is coupled to the vehicle.

Acoustic signals



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on [page 44](#).

The acoustic signals serve as a safety function and provide information about the success of a performed action.

Signals	Status
Interrupted tone	Open (using the button  on the remote control key or the button C » Fig. 22 on page 45) Automatic closing of the lid » page 45 , ! in section <i>Introduction</i>
1 continuous tone	Force limiter
3 rising tones	Confirmation of the storage of the lid position
3 identical tones	fault

Adjusting/deleting the top lid position



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on [page 44](#).

Adjusting

- Stop the lid in the desired position (electrically or manually).
- Press and hold the button **B** » [Fig. 21](#) on [page 45](#) for longer than 3 seconds.

Storing the new position is confirmed with an audible signal.

Delete

- Carefully lift up the lid manually to the maximum opening position.
- Press and hold the button **B** » [Fig. 21](#) on [page 45](#) for longer than 3 seconds.

An audible signal sounds and the height which was originally set is deleted from the memory, while the basic position of the top lid position is again set.

The top lid position is adjusted, for example, in the following situations.

- When the space for opening the lid is limited (e.g. garage height).
- For a more convenient operation, such as by a person's height.

The top position which is reached when the lid opens automatically, is always lower than the maximum top position which can be reached when the lid is opened manually.

The lid always opens to the height which was last stored.

Malfunctions



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 44.

If the battery is disconnected and reconnected while the lid is open, it is necessary to activate the system of the electric boot lid. Activation means closing the lid by hand. Thus, the end position of the lid is stored under fully closed in secured lock.

Examples of operational malfunctions

Description of the malfunction	Possible solutions
The lid cannot be lifted out of the lock	Emergency unlocking of the lid » page 249
The lid does not react to an opening signal	Removing a possible obstacle (e.g. snow), re-opening the lid » page 45 Press handle  and pull the lid upwards
The lid remains in the top position	Manual closing of the lid

Electrical power windows



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Opening/closing the window from the driver seat _____ 48
- Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors ____ 48

- Force limit _____ 49
- Window convenience operation _____ 49
- Operational faults _____ 49

The electrical power windows can only be operated when the ignition is switched on.

After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for approx. 10 minutes. The electrical power windows are only switched off completely once the driver's door or front passenger door are opened.

When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.



WARNING

- Ensure that no persons are still left in the vehicle when locking the vehicle. In an emergency, the windows will no longer be able to be opened from the inside.
- The system is fitted with a force limiter » page 49. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury!
- It is recommended to deactivate the electrically operated power windows in the rear doors (safety switch)  if there are children in the rear seats » Fig. 23 on page 48.



CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- In the event that the windows are frozen, first of all eliminate the ice » page 207, *De-icing windows and exterior mirrors* and only then operate the electrical power windows. Otherwise, the window sealing and the electrical power window mechanism could be damaged.
- In the winter, ice accumulating on the surface of the window may cause there to be more resistance when closing the window. The window will stop and move back several centimetres.
- It is necessary to deactivate the force limiter to close the window » page 49.
- When leaving the locked vehicle make sure that the windows are closed at all times.



For the sake of the environment

At high speeds, you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.



Note

The window lift system is equipped with protection against overheating. Repeated opening and closing of the window can cause this mechanism to overheat. If this happens, it will not be possible to operate the window for a short time. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the overheating protection has cooled down.

Opening/closing the window from the driver seat

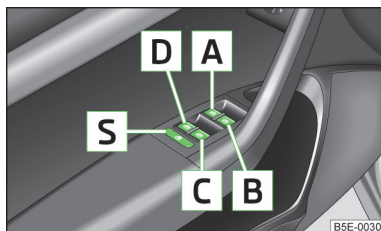


Fig. 23
Buttons on the driver's door



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 47.

Buttons for the electrical power windows » Fig. 23.

- A** Button for electrical power window of the driver's door
- B** Button for electrical power window of the front passenger door
- C** Button for electrical power window of the rear right door
- D** Button for electrical power window of the rear left door
- S** Safety pushbutton

Opening

- Lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position. Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.

The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing

- Pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position. Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.

The window can also be fully closed automatically by pulling the button up to the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Safety pushbutton

The buttons for power windows in the rear doors can be deactivated by pressing the safety switch **S** » Fig. 23. The buttons for the electrical power windows in the rear doors are activated again by pressing the safety pushbutton **S** again.

If the buttons for the rear doors are deactivated, the warning light  in the safety switch **S** lights up.

Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors



Fig. 24
Button arrangement in the front passenger door



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 47.

There is a button in the front passenger door and in the rear doors for that window.

Opening

- Lightly press the appropriate button **down** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the button **down** as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing

➤ Lightly press the appropriate button **up** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

The window can be completely closed automatically by briefly pressing the button **up** as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Force limit



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 47.

The electrical power window system is fitted with a force limiter. It reduces the risk of bruises or injuries when closing the windows.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds - **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Window convenience operation



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 47.

Convenience opening/closing of all windows can be operated by locking/unlocking the vehicle as follows.

Settings the window convenience operation » *Infotainment owner's manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

The prerequisite for ensuring that the convenience operating feature correctly is the automatic opening/closing of all windows is operational.

Opening and closing can take place in one of the following ways.

Opening

- Press the symbol button  button on the remote control key.
- Hold the key in the driver's lock in the unlock position.
- Hold button  in the opening position » Fig. 23 on page 48.

Closing

- Press the symbol button  button on the remote control key.
- Hold the key in the driver's lock in the lock position.
- Hold button  in the closing position » Fig. 23 on page 48.
- In the KESSY system, hold a finger on the sensor  » Fig. 14 on page 38.

You can interrupt the opening or closing process for the windows immediately by releasing the key or the the button  and interrupting the locking/unlocking.

Convenience opening or closing the window using the key in the driver's lock is only possible within 45 seconds after locking the vehicle.

Operational faults



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 47.

The automatic power windows do not work if the vehicle battery was disconnected and connected while a window is open. The system must be activated.

Activation sequence:

¹⁾ Convenience opening and closing the windows with the button  is possible immediately after unlocking the vehicle or turning off the ignition and opening the driver's or front passenger's door.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
- Release the button.
- Pull the relevant button upwards again for approx. 3 seconds, and keep it pressed down.

Panoramic sliding/tilting roof (Octavia)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation _____ 50
 Convenience operation of sliding / tilting roof _____ 51

The panoramic sliding/tilting roof (abbreviated in the following as 'sliding/tilting roof') can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is higher than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as the driver or front passenger's door is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

! CAUTION

- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.
- If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof does not operate correctly. Next, move the rotary switch into position **A** » Fig. 25 on page 50, pull the recess firmly downwards and hold forwards firmly. The sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again after around 10 seconds. Do not release the control dial until it has done so.

Operation

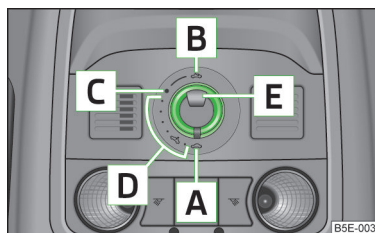


Fig. 25
Control dial for the sliding/tilting roof

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 50.

Comfort position

- Turn the switch to position **C** » Fig. 25.

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is reduced.

Open partially

- Turn the switch to a position in area **D**.

Open fully

- Turn the switch to position **B** and hold it in this position (spring-tensioned position).

Tilting roof

- Turn the switch to position **A**.
- Press the switch in the region of the lug **E** towards the roof.

Closing

- Turn the switch to position **A**.
- Press the switch on the recess **E** down and pull forwards.

Force limiter

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. The sliding/tilting roof stops and moves back several centimetres when it cannot be closed because there is something in the way (e.g. ice). The sliding/tilting roof can be fully closed without a force limiter by pressing the switch on the recess **E** down and then pushing it forward until the sliding/tilting roof is fully closed » **!**

WARNING

When closing the sliding/tilting roof proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

CAUTION

During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

Note

The sliding / tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. The sun blind is operated manually.

Convenience operation of sliding / tilting roof



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 50.

The sliding / tilting roof can be operated by locking or unlocking using the key or using the KESSY system with the aid of the sensor  » Fig. 14 on page 38.

Closing

The sliding/tilting roof can be closed as follows.

- Press the symbol button  button on the remote control key.
- Hold the key in the driver's lock in the lock position.
- In the KESSY system, hold a finger on the sensor  » Fig. 14 on page 38.

By releasing the lock or lifting your finger off the sensor  when using the KESSY system, the closing process is immediately interrupted.

Tilting roof

- Press the symbol button  button on the remote control key.

WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury. The force limiter does not operate with the convenience closing.

Note

The sliding/tilting roof cannot be opened using the convenience operating feature.

Panoramic sliding/tilting roof (Octavia Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	52
Opening/closing the sun screen	52
Convenience operation of sliding / tilting roof	53

The panoramic sliding/tilting roof (abbreviated in the following as 'sliding/tilting roof') can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is higher than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as the driver or front passenger's door is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

CAUTION

- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.
- If, for example, the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof does not operate correctly. Next, move the rotary switch into position  » Fig. 26 on page 52 , pull the recess firmly downwards and hold forwards firmly. The sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again after around 10 seconds. Do not release the control dial until it has done so.
- If, for example, the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sun screen does not operate correctly. Then turn the switch to position  » Fig. 26 on page 52 and press and hold the button  » Fig. 27 on page 52. The sun screen opens and closes again after around 10 seconds. Do not release the control dial until it has done so.

Operation

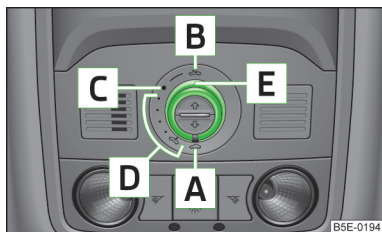


Fig. 26
Control dial for the sliding/tilting roof



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 51.

Comfort position

- Turn the switch to position **C** » Fig. 26.

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is reduced.

Open partially

- Turn the switch to a position in area **D**.

Open fully

- Turn the switch to position **B** and hold it in this position (spring-tensioned position).

Tilting roof

- Turn the switch to position **A**.
- Press the switch in the region **E** towards the roof.

Closing

- Turn the switch to position **A**.
- Press the switch on the recess **E** down and pull forwards.

Force limiter

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. The sliding/tilting roof stops and moves back several centimetres when it cannot be closed because there is something in the way (e.g. ice). The sliding/tilting roof can be fully closed without a force limiter by pressing the switch on the recess **E** down and then pushing it forward until the sliding/tilting roof is fully closed » **I**.



WARNING

When closing the sliding/tilting roof proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!



CAUTION

During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

Opening/closing the sun screen

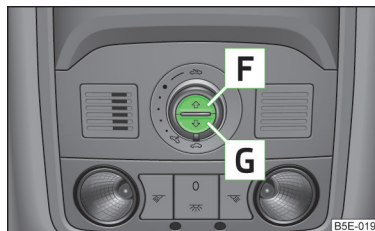


Fig. 27
Buttons for sun screen



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 51.

The sun screen can be closed or opened using the buttons » Fig. 27.

Opening

- Briefly press the button **F** » Fig. 27 to open fully.
- Press and hold the button **F** to open to the desired position.

The opening process stops when one releases the button.

Closing

- Briefly press the button **G** » Fig. 27 to close fully.
- Press and hold the button **F** to close in the desired position.

The closing process stops when one releases the button.

Convenience operation of sliding / tilting roof



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 51.

The sliding / tilting roof can be operated by locking or unlocking using the key or using the KESSY system with the aid of the sensor  » Fig. 14 on page 38.

Closing

➤ Press the symbol button  on the key or hold the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the lock position, or for the KESSY system, keep your finger on the sensor  » Fig. 14 on page 38 » .

By releasing the lock or lifting your finger off the sensor  when using the KESSY system, the closing process is immediately interrupted.

Tilting roof

➤ Press the symbol button  button on the remote control key.



WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury. The force limiter does not operate with the convenience closing.



Note

The sliding/tilting roof cannot be opened using the convenience operating feature. ■

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Side lights and low beam	55
Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)	55
Turn signal and main beam	56
Automatic driving lamp control	57
Adaptive headlights (AFS)	57
Headlight assist	58
Fog lights	59
Fog lights with the CORNER function	59
Rear fog light	60
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME	60
Hazard warning light system	61
Parking lights	61

The lights work only with the ignition on, unless otherwise stated.

On models fitted with **right-hand steering**, the position of some of the controls differs from that shown in » [Fig. 28](#) on page 55. The symbols which mark the positions of the controls are identical.

Keep the headlights lenses clean. The following guidelines must be observed » [page 207](#), *Headlight lenses*.

WARNING

- The activation of the lights should only be undertaken in accordance with national legal requirements.
- The driver is always responsible for the correct settings and use of the lights.
- The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the light and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the given light conditions. The light sensor cannot, for example, detect rain or snow. Under these conditions we recommend switching on the low beam or fog lights!

Note

- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.
- The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up in the peripheral areas. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.
- The instruments are also illuminated when the side light, low or high beam light is switched on. The brightness of the instrument lighting can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Side lights and low beam

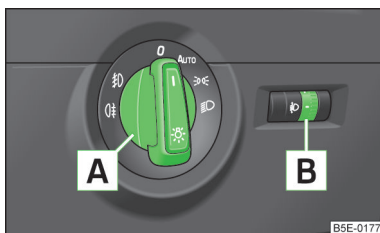


Fig. 28
Light switch and control dial for the headlight beam range regulation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 54.

Light switch positions » Fig. 28.

0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)

AUTO Automatic switching lights on and off » page 57

» Switch on the parking light or parking lights on both sides » page 61

» Switching on the low beam

» Switch on the front fog lamp » page 59

» Switching on the rear fog light » page 60

Headlight beam control

Turning the rotary switch » Fig. 28 from position — to 3 gradually activates the headlight beam control, thereby shortening the beam of light.

The positions of the width of illumination correspond approximately to the following car load.

- Front seats occupied, boot empty
- 1 All seats occupied, boot empty
- 2 All seats occupied, boot loaded
- 3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to satisfy the following conditions.

- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

Note

- We recommend you adjust the headlight beam when the low beam is switched on.
- The Bi-Xenon bulbs adapt automatically to the load and driving state of the vehicle when the ignition is switched on and when driving. Vehicles that are equipped with Bi-Xenon headlights do not have a manual headlight range adjustment control.
- The low beam continues to shine while the ignition is switched on and the light switch is in the position or AUTO. After switching off the ignition, the low beam is switched off automatically and only the side lights come on. The side light goes out after the ignition key is removed.

Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 54.

The daytime running lights function provides the lighting of the front of the vehicle.

Switching on daytime running lights

» The light switch is in position 0 or turn AUTO » Fig. 28 on page 55.

Activating or deactivating daytime running lights function on vehicles with Infotainment

The daytime running light can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Deactivating the daytime running lights feature on vehicles without Infotainment

- » Pull the turn signal and main beam lever to the steering wheel and push downwards » Fig. 29 on page 56.
- » At the same time switch on the ignition and hold the lever down in this position for at least 3 seconds.

Activating the daytime running lights feature on vehicles without Infotainment

- » Pull the turn signal and main beam lever to the steering wheel and push upwards » Fig. 29 on page 56.
- » At the same time switch on the ignition and hold the lever down in this position for at least 3 seconds.

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met:

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The daylight driving lights function is activated.
- ✓ The light switch is in the position 0 or **AUTO** » Fig. 30 on page 57.

i Note

When the daytime running light is switched on, the side lights (neither at the front or rear) and the number plate lights are not lit.

Turn signal and main beam

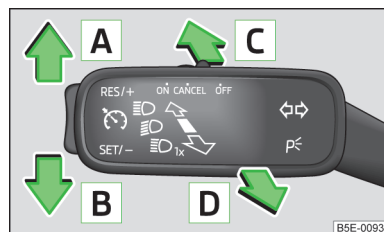


Fig. 29
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 54.

Operating lever positions » Fig. 29.

- A** Switch on right turn signal ⇨
- B** Switch on left turn signal ⇤
- C** Switch on main beam (spring-tensioned position) ⌌
- D** Switch on main beam or headlamp flasher (spring-loaded position) ⌌

The parking light can also be controlled with the control lever » page 61.

The **main beam** can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

When the high beam or headlight flasher is on, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

When the left or right turn signal is on, the warning light or flashes in the instrument cluster.

On vehicles with Headlight assist, when the lever is put into position **C**, the Assistant is activated » page 58.

"Convenience turn signal"

If you only wish to flash three times, briefly push **the lever** to the upper or lower pressure point and **release again**.

The "convenience turn signal" can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

- Turn signal for changing lanes - to only flash briefly, only move **the lever** up or down to the pressure point and **hold it in this position**.

WARNING

Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

i Note

- The headlight flasher system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.
- The turn signal light switches itself off automatically when driving around a curve or after making a turn.
- The warning light flashes at twice its normal rate if a bulb for the turn signal light fails.

Automatic driving lamp control

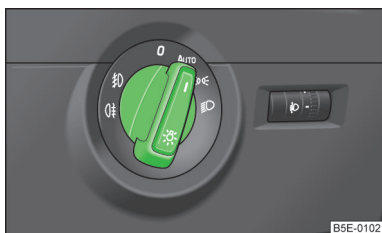


Fig. 30
Light switch

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 54.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 30, the parking lights, low beam and number plate lights are switched on or off automatically.

The light is regulated based on data gathered by the light sensor attached between the windscreen and the interior mirror.

The sensitivity of the light sensor can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the symbol **AUTO** lights up next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol  next to the light switch also lights up.

Automatic headlight control in rain

If the light switch is in position **AUTO** and if automatic wiping in rain or wiping (position 2 or 3) is switched on for longer than 30 seconds » page 66, the side lights and low beam will switch on automatically.

The light switches off when automatic wiping/wiping (position 2 or 3) is not switched on for longer than approx. 4 seconds.

The automatic headlight control in rain can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

CAUTION

Do not affix any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen, so that its functionality is not impaired or disabled. ■

Adaptive headlights (AFS)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 54.

The AFS system works in tandem with automatic driving lamp control **AUTO**, please read the following » page 57.

The AFS system makes sure the street remains lit up depending on the traffic and weather situation.

The system automatically adjusts the cone of light in front of the vehicle based on the vehicle speed, whether the windscreen wipers are in use, the rear fog lights, and data from Infotainment Navigation.

The AFS system can work only if the following condition is met.

✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.

The AHL system operates in the following modes.

Out of town mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is similar to the low beam. The mode is active if none of the following modes are active.

City mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that it illuminates the adjacent pavement, crossings, etc. The mode is active at speeds of 15-50 km/h.

Motorway mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can respond in time to an obstruction or other hazard in time. The mode is active at speeds above 110 km/h.

Rain mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can reduce the glare from oncoming vehicles in rain.

The mode is active at speeds of 50 – 90 km/h and if the windscreen wipers continuously operate for a period of time longer than 2 minutes. The mode is deactivated when the windscreen wipers are switched off for longer than 8 minutes.

Fog mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver is not dazzled by the reflection of the cone of light by fog in front of the vehicle. ►

The mode is active at speeds of 15 – 70 km/h and if the rear fog light is switched on for a period of time longer than 10 seconds. The mode is deactivated when the rear fog light is switched off for longer than 5 seconds.

Dynamic cornering lights

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted to the steering angle so that the road in the curve is illuminated. This function is active at speeds greater than 10 km/h and in all AFS modes.

Tourist light (Travel mode)

This mode makes it possible to drive in countries with opposing traffic system (driving on the left/right) without dazzling the oncoming vehicles.

When the "tourist light" mode is active, the above-mentioned modes and the side swivel of the headlights is deactivated.

The "Tourist light" mode can be configured in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

! WARNING

If the AFS system is defective, the headlights are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which prevents a possible dazzling of oncoming traffic. This reduces the cone of light in front of the vehicle. Drive carefully and visit a specialist garage as soon as possible.

i Note

If the Eco driving mode is selected, the AFS system is deactivated » [page 161](#).

Headlight assist

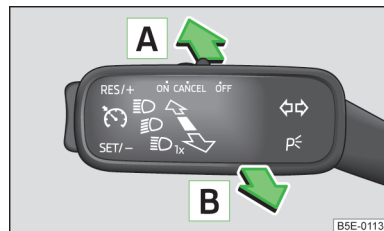


Fig. 31
Operating lever: Headlight assist



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings [I](#) on page 54.

The Headlight assist switches the headlights on/off automatically depending on the environmental conditions.

The headlight is regulated based on data gathered by the camera attached between the windscreen and interior mirror.

The function of high beam assist can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

The headlight can switch off automatically at speeds above 60 km/h. The headlight switches off automatically when the speed falls below 30 km/h.

When the assistant automatically switches on the main beam, warning light  is lit in the instrument cluster.

Activating

- Turn the light switch to the **AUTO** » [Fig. 30](#) on page 57 position.
- Place the lever in position [A](#) (spring-tensioned position) » [Fig. 31](#).

The warning icon  for the activated headlight assist appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Deactivating

- If the headlight is currently switched on automatically, move the lever into position [B](#) (spring-tensioned position) » [Fig. 31](#).
- If the headlight is **not** currently switched on automatically, move the lever into position [A](#) (the headlight switches on) followed by position [B](#).

If you want to **reactivate** the Assist, put the lever back into position [A](#).

The Assist can also be deactivated when the light switch is turned from position **AUTO** to another position.

Manually switching on the headlights

If the headlight is **not** switched on automatically, it can be switched on manually - put the lever into position [A](#). The assistant is deactivated, the warning icon  goes out.

Manually switching off the headlights

If the headlight is **switched on** automatically, it can be switched off manually - put the lever into position [B](#). The assistant is deactivated, the warning icon  goes out.

Information message

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

M **Fault: Light Assist**

S **LIGHT ASSIST FAULT**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

M **Light Assist: clean the windscreen!**

S **WINDSCREEN PLEASE CLEAN**

Check for any obstacles on the windscreen in the viewing area of the camera.

! WARNING

Headlight assist only functions as a support and does not relieve the driver of his responsibility to check the headlights and light beam and, if necessary, to switch on the lights depending on the light conditions. Manual operation may be required in the following situations.

- Poor visibility conditions, e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall.
- The oncoming traffic is partially blocked on roads or motorways.
- Passing poorly lit road users, e.g. cyclists.
- Driving around "sharp" curves.
- Driving on sharp slopes up/large inclines.
- Driving through poorly-lit locations.
- Driving over highly reflective surfaces.
- The windscreen around the camera is dirty, iced up, misted up, or covered by stickers.
- Near the camera lens there is a light source, such as the screen of an external navigation system.

! CAUTION

Do not attach any stickers or similar objects to the windscreen to avoid impairing the functions of the Assist system.

Fog lights

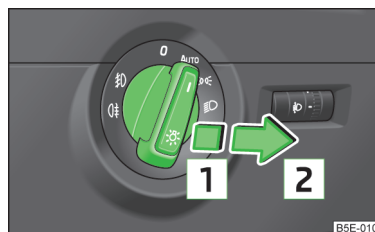


Fig. 32
Light switch



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 54.

Switching on/off

➤ Turn the light switch to position **AUTO**, or » Fig. 32.

➤ Pull the light switch to position **1**.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the fog lights are switched on » page 15.

Fog lights with the CORNER function



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 54.

The CORNER function improves illumination of the vehicle surroundings when turning, parking and the like, by switching on the fog lights on the respective side of the vehicle.

The CORNER function is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply to the right or left¹⁾.
- ✓ The engine is running.

¹⁾ If both switch-on conditions are conflicting, for example, if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

- ✓ The vehicle is stopped or moves at a speed of no more than 40 km/h.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on or the light switch is in the position **AUTO** and the low beam is switched on.
- ✓ The daytime running lights are not switched on.
- ✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

The CORNER light is mainly intended to be used for illuminating the nearby environment at a broad angle in front of and beside the vehicle. It lights up and goes out gradually.

Note

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

Rear fog light



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 54.

Switching on/off

- Turn the light switch into position **AUTO** or  ➤  ➤  ➤ Fig. 32 on page 59.
- Pull the light switch to position .

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

If the vehicle is not fitted with fog lights, the rear fog light is switched on by pulling out the light switch directly to the position . This switch can only be put into one position.

The warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster when the rear fog light is switched on ➤ page 15.

Only the rear fog light on the trailer lights up if the vehicle has a factory-fitted towing device or a towing device from ŠKODA original accessories and it is driven with a trailer.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 54.

COMING HOME/LEAVING HOME (hereafter referred to only as function) makes it possible to automatically switch on the lights for a short time after leaving the vehicle or when approaching the vehicle in poor visibility.

The function is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met:

- ✓ The light switch is in position **AUTO** ➤ Fig. 30 on page 57.
- ✓ The visibility in the vehicle environment is reduced.
- ✓ The ignition is switched off.

The function and duration of the lighting can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment ➤ *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (button **CAR**).

The light is regulated based on data gathered by the light sensor attached between the windscreen and the interior mirror ➤ page 57.

The function switches on the parking and low beam lights, the entry lighting in the exterior mirrors and the licence plate light.

COMING HOME

The light turns on automatically when you open the driver's door.

The light turns off after the preset time when you close all the doors and the boot lid.

If a door or the boot lid remains open, the light goes out after 60 seconds.

LEAVING HOME

The light turns on automatically after the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control.

The light turns off after a preset time or after the vehicle is locked.

CAUTION

Do not affix any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen, so that its functionality is not impaired or disabled. ▶

i Note

If this function is activated constantly, the battery will be heavily discharged particularly in short-haul traffic.

Hazard warning light system



Fig. 33
Button for hazard warning light system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 54.

Switching on/off

➤ Press the button  » Fig. 33.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The warning light for the turn signals and the warning light in the button also flash at the same time. The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically.

If the turn signal light is switched on when the hazard warning light and the ignition are both switched on, then only the turn signal light on the corresponding vehicle side will flash.

! WARNING

Switch on the hazard warning light system if, for example, the following occurs.

- You encounter a traffic congestion.
- The vehicle has broken down.

Parking lights



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 54.

Parking light switching on

- Switch off the ignition.
- Place the control lever into position **A** or **B** as far as it can go » Fig. 29 on page 56 - the parking light on the right/left-hand side of the vehicle is switched on.

Switching on the side light on both sides

- Turn the light switch **A** to position  » Fig. 28 on page 55 and lock the vehicle.

i Note

- The parking light  can only be activated if the ignition is switched off.
- If the right or left turn signal light has been switched on and the ignition is switched off, the parking light is not automatically switched on.

Interior lights



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front interior light	62
Rear interior light	62
Rear interior light	63
Front door warning light	63
Entry space lighting	63

Front interior light

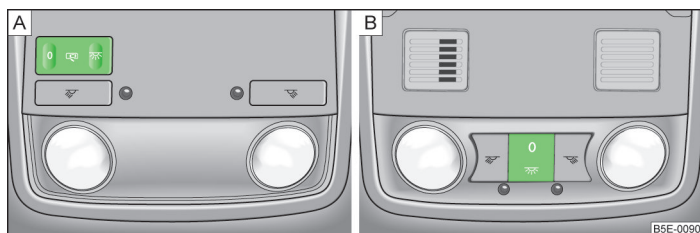


Fig. 34 Switch for front interior light - 2 versions

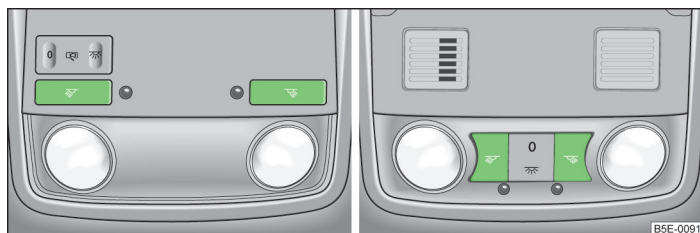


Fig. 35 Switch for reading lights - 2 versions

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 61.

Rocker switch positions » Fig. 34.

switching on

0 switching off

Operation using the door contact switch (middle position)

For vehicles with interior monitoring there is no icon for the center position (operation with the door contact switch) » Fig. 34 - [B].

Reading lights

Switch the reading light on/off » Fig. 35

If light operation with the door contact switch is enabled, **the light will come on** when one of the following events occurs:

- The vehicle is unlocked.
- One of the doors or the luggage compartment lid is being opened.
- The ignition key is removed.

If light operation with the door contact switch is enabled, **the light will go off** when one of the following events occurs:

- The vehicle is locked.
- The ignition is switched on.
- About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Note

- If the interior light remains switched on when the ignition is switched off or if one of the doors is open, the light will automatically go out after around 10 minutes.
- Two diffuse lights are integrated in the front interior lighting, that illuminate the gearshift lever and the middle of the dash panel. These are switched on automatically when the parking light is activated. Also, after switching on the ignition when the parking lights are switched on, the door handle lighting comes on.

Rear interior light

Applies to vehicles without a panoramic sliding roof.

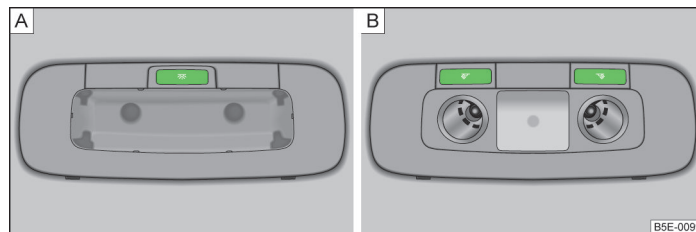


Fig. 36 Interior light without reading lights/interior light with reading lights

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 61.

The rear interior light is operated together with the front interior light » page 62. ►

Switching lamp without reading lights on/off

➤ Press the button  » Fig. 36 - [A].

Switching the reading light on/off

➤ Press the button  or  » Fig. 36 - [B].

Rear interior light

Applies to vehicles with a panoramic sliding roof.

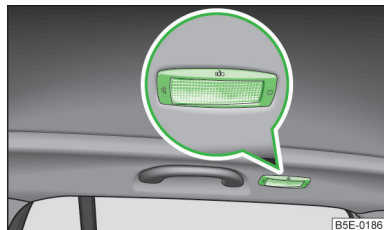


Fig. 37
Interior lights at the rear



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 61.

The light can be operated by moving the lens into one of the following positions » Fig. 37.

 switching on

 switching off

 Operation using the door contact switch (middle position)¹⁾

Front door warning light

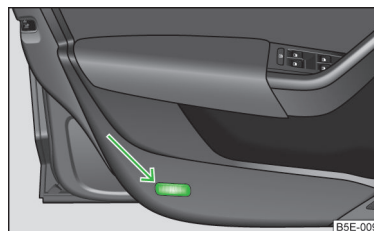


Fig. 38
Warning light



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 61.

The warning light is located in the lower door trim panel » Fig. 38.

The light switches on/off when the front door is opened or closed.

Vehicles without this warning light have only a reflector at this point.



Note

If the door is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

Entry space lighting



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 61.

The lighting is positioned on the bottom edge of the exterior mirror and illuminates the entry area of the front door.

The light comes on after the vehicle has been unlocked or on opening the front door. The lighting goes out about 30 seconds after the doors are closed or if the ignition is switched on.

¹⁾ In this position, the same rules apply to this light as for the front interior light » page 62.

! WARNING

If the entry light is on, do not touch its cover – risk of burns!

i Note

If the door is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

Visibility

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen and rear window heater	64
Sun visors	65
Sun screen	65

Windscreen and rear window heater

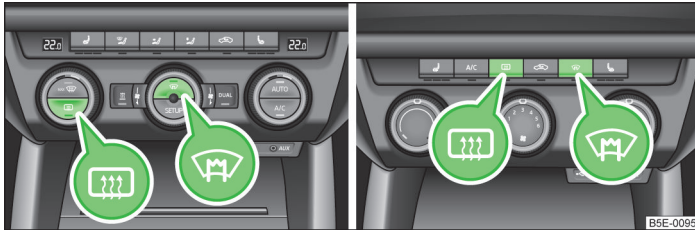


Fig. 39 Buttons for the front and rear window heater/manual air-conditioning system, heating



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 64.

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 39.

☞ Switching the windscreen heater on/off

☞ Switch the rear window heater on/off

When the heater is switched on, a lamp lights up inside or below the button.

The windscreen and rear window heater only operates when the engine is running.

The windscreen and rear window heater automatically **switches off** after approximately 10 minutes.



For the sake of the environment

The heating should be switched off as soon as the window is de-iced or free from mist. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy » [page 134](#), *Saving electrical energy*.

i Note

- If the on-board voltage drops, the windscreen and rear window heater switches off automatically, to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » [page 227](#), *Automatic load deactivation*.
- If the light within or below the button flashes, the radiator will not work because of the low state of the battery.

Sun visors

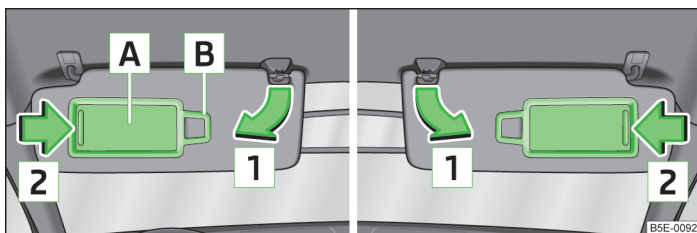


Fig. 40 Sun visor: left/right



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 64.

The sun visor for the driver or front passenger can be pulled out of the fixture and swivelled towards the door in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 40.

The sun visors each have a vanity mirror **B** with a cover. Push the cover in the direction of the arrow **2**.

The purpose of the note holder **B** is to store small objects, such as a notepad, etc.

! WARNING

The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.

Sun screen

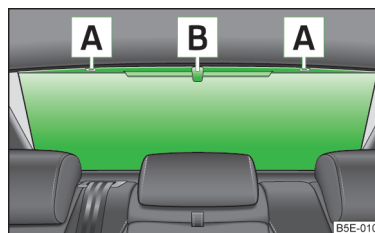


Fig. 41
Sun screen



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 64.

The sun screen is located in a housing on the luggage compartment cover.

Extending

» Pull the sun screen on the handle **B** » Fig. 41 and hang it in the holder **A**.

Retracting

» Remove the sun screen from the holders **A** and hold it on the handle **B** » Fig. 41 so that it can slowly roll up into the housing on the boot cover without being damaged.

Windscreen wipers and washers



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen wipers and washers 66

Headlight cleaning system 67

The windscreen wipers and the wash system only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet is closed.

If the intermittent wipe is switched on, the intervals are also controlled depending on speed.

When automatic wiping in rain is active, the wiper intervals are regulated based on the intensity of the rain.

The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

Automatic rear window wiping can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Top up with windscreen wiper fluid » [page 218](#).

! WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » [page 250](#).
- Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. Otherwise the window cleaner could freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.
- Automatic wiping in rain only operates as a support. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

! CAUTION

- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before the journey or before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wipers are switched on, the windscreen wipers will continue wiping in the same mode after the ignition is turned back on. The windscreen wipers could freeze up in cold temperatures between the time the ignition was turned off and when it was turned back on again.
- Carefully detach frozen wiper blades from the front or rear window.
- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.
- Do not switch on the ignition if the front wiper arms are retracted. The wiper blades would move back into their rest position and while doing so damage the paintwork of the bonnet.
- If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wiper will try to push away the obstacle. The wiper stops automatically after 5 attempts to eliminate the obstacle, in order to avoid a damage to the wiper. Remove the the obstacle and switch the wiper on again.

i Note

- Each time the ignition switches off for the third time, the position of the windscreen wipers changes. This counteracts an early fatigue of the wiper rubbers.
- The rear window wiper only operates if the boot lid is closed.
- Keep the wiper blades clean. They may become soiled, e.g., with wax residues after washing in automatic car wash systems » [page 204](#).
- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than approx. +10 °C.

Windscreen wipers and washers

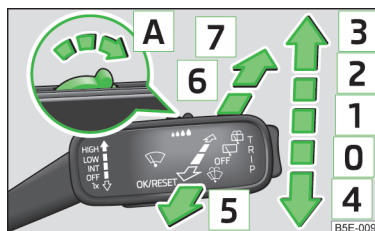


Fig. 42
Operating lever: Windscreen wipers and washer settings



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on [page 65](#).

Operating lever positions » [Fig. 42](#).

- 0** Wipers off
- 1** Periodic windscreen wiping/automatic wiping in rain
- 2** slow windscreen wiping
- 3** rapid windscreen wiping
- 4** Flick windscreen wiping, service position of the wiper arms » [page 250](#), (spring-loaded position)
- 5** Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen (spring-tensioned position)
- 6** Wiping the rear window pane (the windscreen wiper wipes at regular intervals after a few seconds)
- 7** Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window (spring-tensioned position)
- A** Switches for setting the required break between the individual wiper strokes (**1** periodic windscreen wiping) or the wiper speed in rain (**1** automatic windscreen wiping in rain)

Automatic windscreen wiping in rain

Automatic windscreen wiping in rain can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen

The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wipers wipe somewhat later. The wash system and the windscreen wiper operate simultaneously at a speed of more than 120 km/h.

Letting go of the operating lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wipers to continue for another 2-3 wiper strokes (depending on the spraying duration).

At a speed of more than 2 km/h, the wiper wipes once again 5 seconds after the last wiper stroke in order to wipe the last drops from the windscreen. This function can be activated/deactivated by a specialist garage.

Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window

The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wiper wipes somewhat later.

Letting go of the operating lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 2-3 wiper strokes (depending on the spraying duration). **The operating lever remains in position [6].**

Automatic rear window wipe (Octavia Estate)

If the lever is in position [2] or [3] » Fig. 42, the rear window is wiped every 30 or 10 seconds if the vehicle's speed exceeds 5 km/h.

If automatic windscreen wiping in rain is activated (the operating lever is in the position [1]) the function is only active if the windscreen wipers operate in continuous mode (no break between each wiping process).

Automatic rear window wiping can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Winter setting of the windscreen wiper

If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. For this reason we recommend adjusting the windscreen wipers in winter so that they can be folded out from the windscreen easily.

- Switch on the windscreen wipers.
- Switch off the ignition.

The windscreen wipers remain in the position in which they were when switching off the ignition.

The service position can also be used as a winter position » [page 250](#).



Note

If the slow or the fast wiper setting is switched on and the vehicle speed decreases to below 4 km/h, the wiper speed is incrementally set to a lower wiper speed. The original setting is restored step by step when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 8 km/h.

Headlight cleaning system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 65.

The headlights will be cleaned once the ignition is on and always upon the first and after every tenth spraying of the windscreen, when the low beam is switched on.

Each time the headlamps are cleaned each lamp is sprayed twice.

You should remove stubborn dirt (such as insect residues) from the headlight lenses at regular intervals, for example when refuelling. The following guidelines must be observed » [page 207](#), *Headlight lenses*.

To ensure the proper operation of the cleaning system during the winter, any snow should be removed from the washer nozzle fixtures and ice should be cleared with a de-icing spray.



CAUTION

Never remove the nozzles from the headlight cleaning system by hand – risk of damage!



Note

The headlamp cleaning system works with an ambient temperature of about -12 °C to + 39 °C.

Rear mirror

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior mirror	69
Exterior mirrors	69

WARNING

- Make sure that the mirror is not covered by ice, snow, mist or other objects.
- Convex (curved outward) or aspheric exterior mirrors increase the field of vision. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
- Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.
- The illuminated display of an external navigation unit can lead to operational faults to the automatic dimming interior mirror – risk of accident.

WARNING

Automatic dimming mirrors contain an electrolytic fluid which may leak should the mirror glass break.

- The leaking electrolytic fluid can irritate the skin, eyes and breath apparatus. Immediately seek out fresh air and leave the vehicle. If this is not possible, open all windows and doors.
- If you swallow electrolytic fluid, seek medical assistance immediately.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. Then consult a doctor immediately.

CAUTION

Never mechanically fold in or fold back the exterior mirrors with the fold-in function  by hand as this will damage the electric drive.

Note

- Automatic mirror dimming operates only properly if the sun screen for the rear window in the housing on the boot cover is not in use or the light striking the interior rear-view mirror is not affected by other objects.
- If the automatic interior mirror dimming is switched off, the exterior mirror dimming is also switched off.
- The mirror heater only operates when the engine is running and up to an outside temperature of +35 °C.
- Do not touch the surface of the exterior mirrors if the exterior mirror heater is switched on.
- If the electrical exterior mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.
- Contact a specialist garage if there is a fault with the power setting function for the exterior mirrors.

Interior mirror

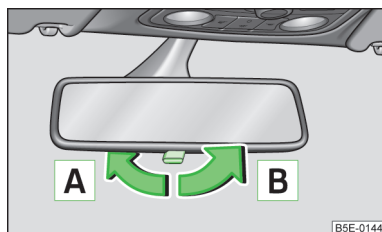


Fig. 43
Manual dimming mirror

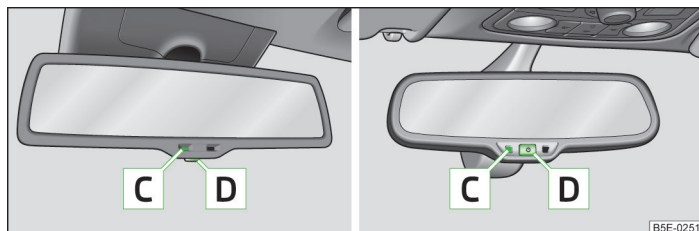


Fig. 44 Automatic dimming mirror

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 68.

Manual dimming interior mirror

- To dim the mirror set the lever on the rear view mirror in the direction of the front wheel - arrow **A** » Fig. 43.
- To restore the original position, adjust the lever on the rear view mirror in the direction of the front wheel off - arrow **B**.

Automatic dimming mirror

- To activate the auto-dimming, press button **D** » Fig. 44.

The warning light **C** illuminates.

- To disable auto-dimming, press button **D** » Fig. 44 again.

The warning light **C** goes out.

If automatic dimming is activated, the mirror dims **automatically** depending on the light striking the mirror from the rear.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror always moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

Do not attach external navigation devices on to the windscreen or in the vicinity of the automatic dimming interior mirror » page 68, in section *Introduction*.

Exterior mirrors

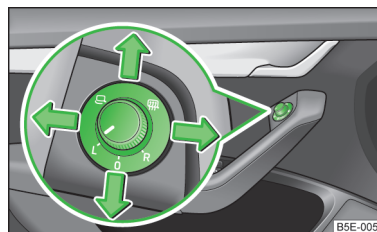


Fig. 45
Front door: Knob for the mirrors

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 68.

The mirror can be adjusted to the desired position by moving the knob in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 45.

The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

The knob can be moved into the following positions.

- L** adjust the left mirror or both mirrors
- R** adjust right mirror or both mirrors
- 0** Switch off mirror control
- Mirror heater
- Folding in the exterior mirrors

Adjusting both mirrors in sync

After the rotary knob to position **L** or in right-hand drive in the position **R** provided, both mirrors may be adjusted simultaneously. ▶

The synchronous setting of both mirrors can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

Folding-in both of the exterior mirrors with the rotary knob

It is only possible to fold in both exterior mirrors when the ignition is switched on and at a speed of up to 50 km/h.

The mirrors are folded out into the driving position after the rotary knob is turned from the position  to a different one.

Automatically folding in and folding back both exterior mirrors

The exterior mirrors are automatically collapsed after locking the vehicle in the park position.

The exterior mirrors are folded out automatically after unlocking the vehicle in the driving position.

Folding in both mirrors can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

Automatic dimming mirror

The exterior mirrors are dimmed together with the automatic dimming interior mirror » [page 69](#).

Folding in passenger mirror

On vehicles fitted with the memory function for the driver's seat » [page 74](#), the mirror tilts down slightly when the reverse gear is engaged and the rotary knob is in the position  or in position  on vehicles with right-hand drive » [Fig. 45](#). This provides an aid in seeing the kerb of the pavement when parking the car.

The mirror returns into its initial position after the rotary knob is moved out of position  (or position  on vehicles with right-hand drive) and put into another position or if the speed is more than 15 km/h.

Folding in of the passenger's side mirror can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

Memory function for mirrors

On vehicles fitted with the memory function for the driver seat » [page 74](#) or the memory function for the remote control key » [page 75](#) it is possible to save each position of the exterior mirror when saving the driver seat position. ■

Seats and useful equipment

Adjusting the seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manually adjusting the front seats	72
Electric front seat adjustment	73
Head restraints	73
Memory function of the electrically adjustable seat	74
Memory function of the remote control key	75

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be fully pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The seat backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important for the following:

- Reaching the controls safely and quickly,
- A relaxed and fatigue-free body position.
- **Achieving the maximum protection offered by the seat belts and the airbag system.**

WARNING

General information

- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
- The electric front seat adjustment is also functional when the ignition is turned off (even with the ignition key removed). Therefore children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.
- The seat backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!
- Never carry more people than there are number of seats in the vehicle.

WARNING (Continued)

- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » [page 193](#), *Transporting children safely with a suitable restraint system.*
- At all times, the front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to match the person's body size and the seat belt must be attached properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to passengers.
- Do not transport any objects on the front passenger seat except objects (e.g. child safety seat) provided for this purpose – risk of accident!

WARNING

Information for the driver

- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell, as these may get caught in the pedal apparatus when driving or braking » [page 126](#). You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or accelerate.

WARNING

Information for the front passenger

- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the dash panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury when braking or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

i Note

- After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.
- For safety reasons, it is not possible to store the seat position in the electric seat memory and remote control key memory if the inclination angle of the seat backrest is more than 102° in relation to the seat cushion.
- Each time you store the position of the electrically adjustable driver's seat and exterior mirrors, the existing setting is deleted.

Manually adjusting the front seats

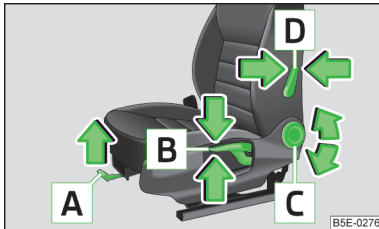


Fig. 46
Control elements on the seat



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 71.

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 46

- A** Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction
- B** Adjusting height of seat¹⁾
- C** Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest
- D** Adjusting lumbar support

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

- Pull the lever **A** » Fig. 46 in the direction of the arrow and push the seat in the required direction.

The lock must click into place after you release the lever.

Adjusting height of seat¹⁾

- Again push or pull the lever **B** » Fig. 46 in the direction of one of the arrows.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

- Relieve any pressure from the seat backrest (do not lean on it) and turn the handwheel **C** » Fig. 46 in the direction of the arrow.

Adjusting lumbar support

- Push the lever **D** » Fig. 46 in the direction of one of the arrow.

¹⁾ Only valid for some countries.

Electric front seat adjustment

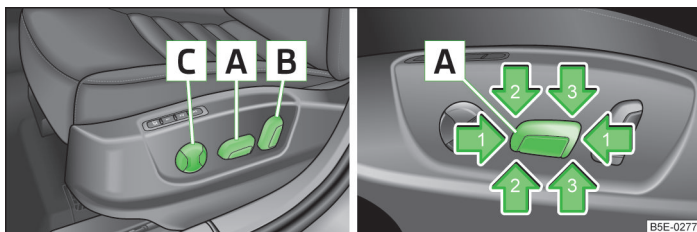


Fig. 47 Control elements / adjusting the seat

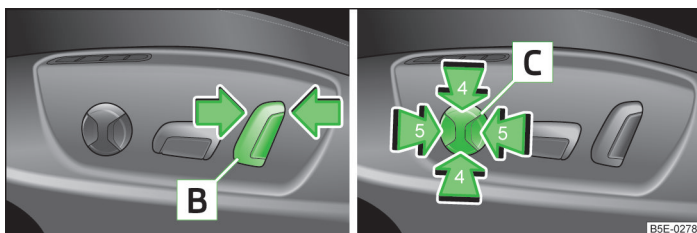


Fig. 48 Setting: Seat back / lumbar support

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 71.

Image description » Fig. 47 and » Fig. 48

- seat adjustment
- Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest
- Adjusting lumbar support

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

» Push the switch in the direction of one of the arrows 1 » Fig. 47.

Adjust the angle of the seat cushion

» Push the switch in the direction of one of the arrows 2 » Fig. 47.

Set the height of the seat cushion

» Push the switch in the direction of one of the arrows 3 » Fig. 47.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

» Push the switch in the direction of one of the arrows » Fig. 48.

Raising or lowering the curvature of the lumbar support

» Push the switch in the region of one of the arrows 4 » Fig. 48.

Reducing or increasing the curvature of the lumbar support

» Push the switch in the region of one of the arrows 5 » Fig. 48.

The adjusted driver's seat position can be set in the memory of the seat » page 74 or the remote control key » page 75.

Note

If the setting procedure is interrupted, you will need to press the button again. ■

Head restraints

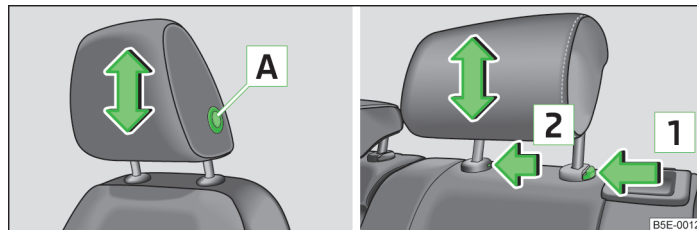


Fig. 49 Head restraint: front/rear

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 71.

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head rest is at the same level as the upper part of your head.

Setting the height

» Hold the **front head restraints** on the sides with both hands, press and hold the safety button » Fig. 49 and move the head restraints into position. ►

- Hold the **rear head restraints** on the sides with both hands and move them **upwards** » Fig. 49.
- To move the **head restraint downwards**, press and hold the safety button [1] with one hand and press the head restraint downwards with the other hand.

The head restraints and the front seats must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers » page 177, *Correct seated position*.

Removing/installing

Only the real head restraints may be removed.

- Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
- Press the locking button in the direction of arrow [1] » Fig. 49 simultaneously press the locking button into the opening [2] using a flat screwdriver with a width of maximum 5 mm and pull out the head rest.
- To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

! WARNING

- The head restraints must be correctly adjusted in order to offer effective protection for the occupants in the event of an accident.
- Never drive with the head restraints removed - risk of injury.
- If the rear seats are occupied, the respective rear head restraint must not be in the lower position.

i Note

- For the sports seats, the head restraints are integrated into the front seat backrests. These headrests cannot be adjusted by height or removed.
- The middle rear head restraint is only adjustable in two positions.

Memory function of the electrically adjustable seat

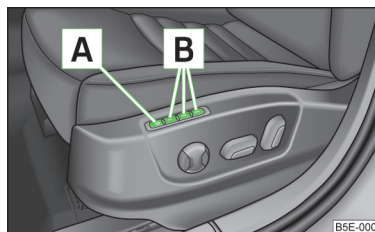


Fig. 50
Memory buttons and SET button



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 71.

The memory function for the driver's seat provides the option to store the positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors. Each of the three memory buttons [B] » Fig. 50 can be assigned a set position.

Storing seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward

- Switch on the ignition.
- Adjust the seat to the desired position.
- Adjust both of the exterior mirrors » page 69.
- Press the button (SET) [A] » Fig. 50.
- Within 10 seconds after pressing the (SET) button, press the desired memory button [B].

An acknowledgment sound confirms the storage.

Saving front passenger mirror settings when reversing

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the required memory button [B] » Fig. 50.
- Adjust the rotary knob for the mirrors to the position R or in right-hand drive to the position L » page 69.
- Engage reverse gear.
- Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position » page 69.
- Disengage reverse gear.

The set position of the exterior mirror is stored.

Retrieving the saved setting

- Tap the desired memory button [B] » Fig. 50 when the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened.

or

- Press down on the desired memory button **B** when the ignition is switched on and the driver's door is closed.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

- Press any button on the driver's seat or the button **(Ⓜ)** on the remote control key.

Note

Each time you store the seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward you also have to re-store the setting of the exterior mirror on the passenger side for reversing.

Memory function of the remote control key



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **(!)** on page 71.

The automatic storage of the driver's seat and exterior mirror positions when locking the vehicle can be turned on in the memory of the remote control key (afterwards only as function of automatic storage).

This function can also be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » Bedienungsanleitung Infotainment, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Storing seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward

- Enable automatic storage.

When automatic storage is activated, the current positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors are saved in the memory of the remote control key each time the vehicle is locked. When the vehicle is next unlocked using the same key, the driver's seat and the external mirrors assume the positions stored in the memory of this key¹⁾.

Saving front passenger mirror settings when reversing

- Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Adjust the rotary knob for the mirrors to the position **R** or in right-hand drive to the position **L** » page 69.

- Engage reverse gear.
- Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position » page 69.
- Disengage reverse gear.

The adjusted position of the exterior mirror is stored in the remote control key memory.

Enable automatic storage

- Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
- Press and hold any memory button **B** » Fig. 50 on page 74. After the seat has assumed the position stored under this button, at the same time press the button **(Ⓜ)** on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

■ The successful activation of the automatic storage function for each key is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

The seat and exterior mirror settings are **not** saved in the memory of the key, which is already saved in the memory button.

The seat can be adjusted to the required position if necessary » page 73.

After locking the vehicle, the current positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors are saved in the memory of the remote control key.

Disable the function of automatic storage

- Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
- Press and hold the **(SET)** button **A** » Fig. 50 on page 74. At the same time, press the button **(Ⓜ)** on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful deactivation of the automatic storage function for each key is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

- Press any button on the driver's seat or the button **(Ⓜ)** on the remote control key.
-

¹⁾ The vehicle must be locked and unlocked with the same key to save the seat and exterior mirror position to the key.

Seat features

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Seat heaters	76
Front armrest	77
Rear armrest	77
Folding front passenger seat	77
Seat backrests	78

Seat heaters

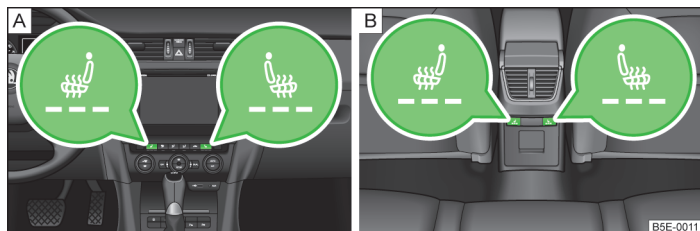


Fig. 51 Heating: Front seats/ rear seats



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 76.

The seat backrests and surfaces of the front seats and the two outer rear seats can be heated electrically.

The seat heating can only be switched on when the engine is running.

Switching on

➤ Press the corresponding symbol button  or  » Fig. 51.

By pressing the button once, the heating is switched to the highest intensity - level 3, which is indicated by three of the warning lights underneath the respective switch » Fig. 51 - [A] or in the respective button » Fig. 51 - [B] illuminating.

With repeated pressing of the switch, the level of the seat heating is down-regulated up to the switch-off. The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights underneath/in the switch.



WARNING

If you have a subdued pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend not to use the seat heating. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.



CAUTION

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- Do not turn on the seat heater if seats are not occupied.
- Do not switch on the seat heating if the seats have objects attached to or placed on them, for example a child seat, a bag, etc. A fault of the heating elements in the seat heating can occur.
- If additional seat covers or protective covers are attached to the seats, do not turn on the seat heater - there is a risk of damaging the seat covers and seat heating.
- Do not clean the seats using moisture » page 210.



Note

If the on-board voltage drops, the seat heating is switched off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 227, *Automatic load deactivation*.

Front armrest

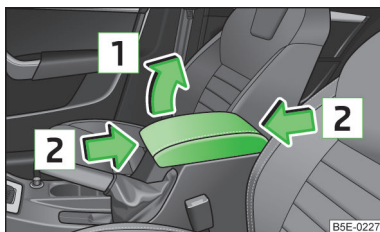


Fig. 52
Adjust armrest



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 76.

The armrest is adjustable for height and length.

Setting the height

- First of all fold the cover downwards and then lift it in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 52 to one of the 4 fixed positions.

Move

- Move the cover into the desired position in the direction of the arrow **2** » Fig. 52.

The armrest includes a storage compartment underneath » page 86.

Note

Push the armrest cover all the way back to the stop before applying the hand-brake.

Rear armrest

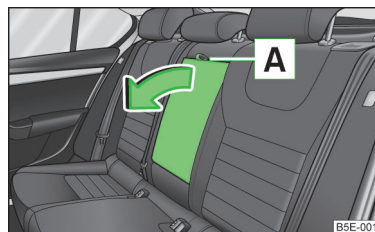


Fig. 53
Fold the armrest forwards



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 76.

Folding forward

- Pull on the loop **A** » Fig. 53 and fold the armrest forward in the direction of the arrow.

A cup holder may be located in the armrest » page 82.

Folding front passenger seat

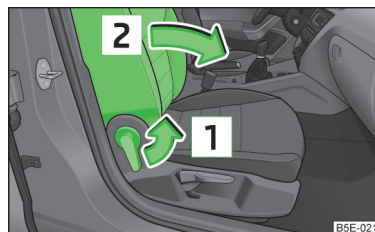


Fig. 54
Folding the front passenger seat forward



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 76.

The front passenger seat can be folded forward into a horizontal position.

Folding forward

- Place the lever in position **1** » Fig. 54.
- Fold the seat backrest forward in the direction of the arrow **2**.

The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.

Folding backwards

- Place the lever in position **1** » Fig. 54.
- Fold the seat backrest in the opposite direction of the arrow **2**.

The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.

! WARNING

- The front passenger airbag should be switched off when transporting objects on the seat which was folded forwards » page 191.
- Adjust the seat backrest only when the vehicle is stationary.
- When moving the seat backrest, make sure the seat backrest has been properly secured – check by pulling on the seat backrest.
- If the seat backrest is folded, passengers may only be transported on the outer seat behind the driver.
- When moving the seat backrest, keep limbs away from between the seat cushion and seat backrest – risk of injury!
- Never transport objects on the seat backrest which was folded forwards, which:
 - impair driver visibility;
 - make it impossible for the driver to control the vehicle, e.g. if they are placed under the pedals, or could protrude into the driver's zone;
 - could lead to injury to passengers due to a change of direction or braking manoeuvre when accelerating sharply.

Seat backrests

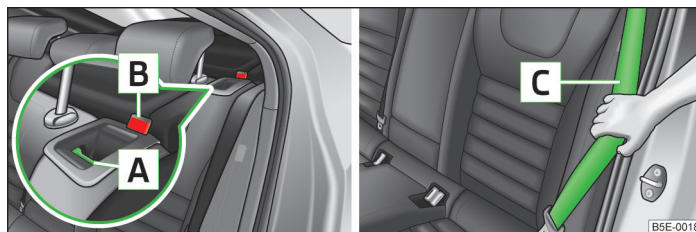


Fig. 55 Seat backrest: Locking/unlocking

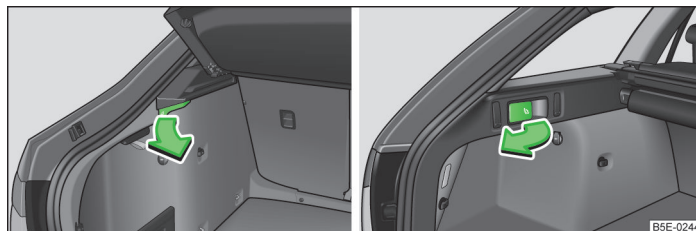


Fig. 56 Luggage compartment: Folding the rear seat backrest forward (Octavia Estate)



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 76.

The luggage compartment can be increased in size by folding the seat backrests forward. The seat backrests can be folded forward individually on vehicles with divided rear seats.

Folding forward

Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adapt the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded seat backrests ¹⁾.

➤ Push the lever **[A]** » Fig. 55 and fold the seat backrest completely forwards.

Fold forward from the luggage compartment

The rear seat backrests can also be unlocked and folded forward from the luggage compartment.

There is a lever on the **right** side of the luggage compartment for unlocking the right and the middle rear seat backrests.

There is a lever on the **left** side of the luggage compartment for unlocking the left rear seat backrest.

➤ Pull the corresponding lever in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 56.

The corresponding rear seat backrest is unlocked and can be folded forward.

Folding backwards

➤ Hold the rear outer seat belt **[C]** » Fig. 55 against the side trim panel.

➤ Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the securing knob **[A]** clicks into place – check by pulling on the seat backrest » **[B]**.

➤ Make sure that the red pin **[B]** is hidden.

! WARNING

- The belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat backrests – they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely locked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment on sudden braking – risk of injury.
- Ensure that the rear seat backrests are properly engaged. Only then can the seat belt for the middle seat reliably fulfil its function.

! CAUTION

- Before folding the seat backrest forward from the luggage compartment, check that there are no objects on the rear seat. When folding the seat backrest forward, they could be damaged or cause damage to the seat backrest and the seat.
- Ensure that the seat belts are not damaged when operating the seat backrests. Under no circumstances must the rear seat belts be jammed by the folded back seat backrests.
- On vehicles with a net partition first the left and then the right and middle rear seat backrest must be unlocked ²⁾.

Practical equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Car park ticket holder	80
Storage compartment on the driver's side	80
Storage compartments in the doors	81
Holder for reflective vest	81
storage compartment in the front center console - not lockable	82
Storage compartment in the front centre console	82
Cup holders	82
Cigarette lighter	83
Ashtray	83
12-volt power outlet	84
Waste container	85
Multimedia holder	85
Storage compartment under the front armrest	86
Glasses storage box	86
Storage compartment on the passenger side	87
Storage compartment under the passenger seat	87
Clothes hook	88 ►

¹⁾ If the front seats are too far back, we recommend that you have the rear head restraints removed before the seat backrests are folded forward. Store the removed head restraints in such a way that they are not be damaged or soiled.

²⁾ Applies to the Octavia Estate.

Storage pockets on the front seats	88
Storage compartment in rear centre console	88
230-volt power	89
Rear seat backrest with long-cargo channel	90
Removable ski bag	90

! WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving (when accelerating or cornering) and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – risk of accident!
- When driving, ensure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell. You would then no longer be able to apply the brakes, operate the clutch or accelerator – risk of accident!
- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- Ash and cigarette or cigar stubs must only be discarded in ashtrays!

Car park ticket holder

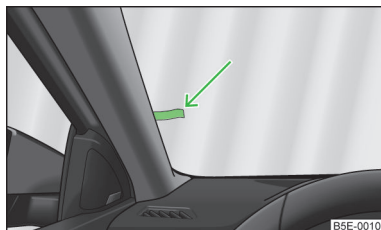


Fig. 57
Parking ticket holder



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 79.

The note holder is designed e.g. for attaching car park tickets.

! WARNING

The attached note has to always be **removed** before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision.

Storage compartment on the driver's side

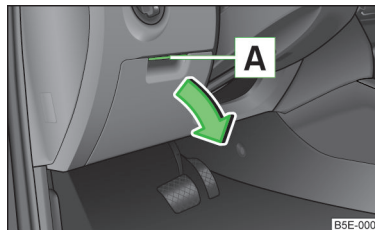


Fig. 58
Storage compartment on the driver's side



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 79.

Opening

- Raise the handle **A** » Fig. 58 and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

- Swivel the lid against the direction of the arrow until it clicks into place.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Storage compartments in the doors

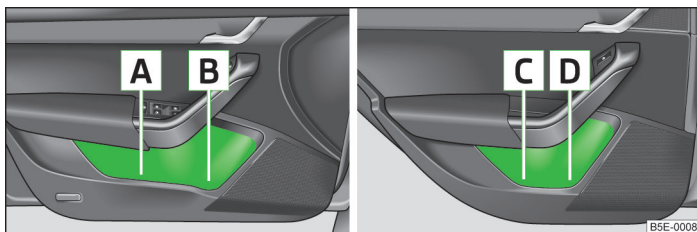


Fig. 59 Storage compartment: in the front door/in the rear door

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 79.

The area  » Fig. 59 and  have a bottle holder.

WARNING

In order to ensure that the operating range of the side airbag is not impaired, area  » Fig. 59 of the storage compartment must only be used for storing objects that do not protrude.

Note

In area  of the stowage compartment of the rear doors, a bottle can be housed with a max. content of 0.5 l. ■

Holder for reflective vest

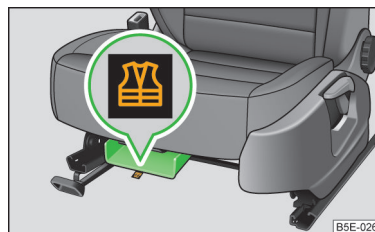


Fig. 60
Driver seat: Holder for reflex vest

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 79.

The holder for the reflex vest is located under the driver's seat » Fig. 60.

WARNING

Do not put anything else except the reflective vest into the holder – otherwise it may fall out of the holder – risk of obstruction or limitation in operating the pedal!

CAUTION

Do not put anything else except the reflective vest into the holder – risk of damage to the holder. ■

storage compartment in the front center console - not lockable



Fig. 61
The open storage compartment



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 79.

Open storage compartment is in the front of the centre console » Fig. 61.



WARNING

The storage compartment must never be used as an ashtray or for the storage of combustible materials - fire hazard and risk of damage to the storage compartment!

Storage compartment in the front centre console

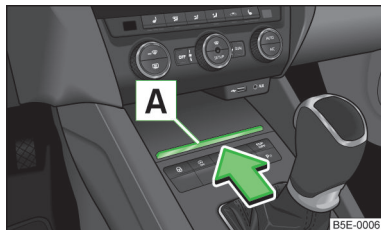


Fig. 62
Opening the storage compartment



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 79.

Open/close

► Press on the edge of the roof **A** » Fig. 62 in the direction of the arrow.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

The storage compartment is provided for storing small items, such as a mobile phone.

The roof antenna signal can be amplified and "fed" to the storage compartment to improve the functions of your mobile phone » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Phone box*.



WARNING

The storage compartment must never be used as an ashtray or for the storage of combustible materials - fire hazard and risk of damage to the storage compartment!

Cup holders

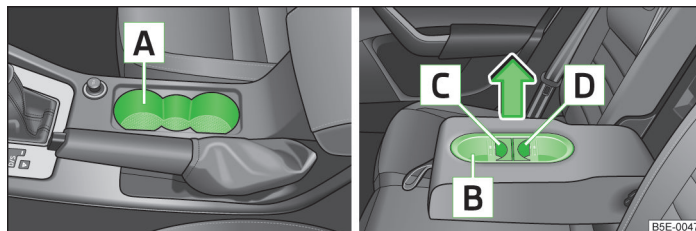


Fig. 63 Cup holder: in the front centre console/in the rear armrest



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 79.

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 63

- A** Cup holder in front centre console
- B** Cup holder in rear armrest
- C** Removable element
- D** Removable element

Two beverage containers can be placed into the cup holder.

You can change the size of the individual openings using the removable elements **C** and **D**.

! WARNING

- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!
- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.

! CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

Cigarette lighter

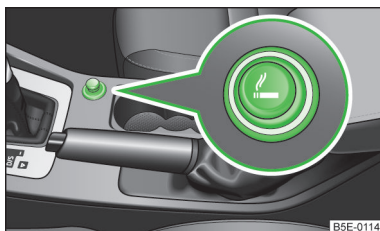


Fig. 64
Cigarette lighter

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 79.

Using the system

- Press in the button in the cigarette lighter » Fig. 64.
- Wait until the button pops forward.
- Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use.
- Place the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

! WARNING

- Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper usage can cause burns.
- The cigarette lighter also operates when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key withdrawn. Therefore never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

i Note

- The cigarette lighter socket cannot be used as a 12Volt socket.
- Further information » page 200, *Service work, adjustments and technical alterations*.

Ashtray

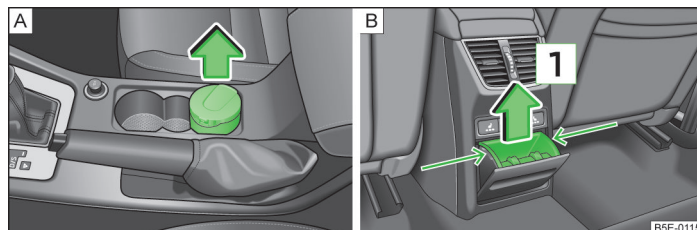


Fig. 65 Ashtrays: front/rear

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 79.

The ashtray can be used for discarding ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like » **!**

Removing/inserting the front ash tray

- Pull out the ashtray » Fig. 65 - [A] in the direction of the arrow.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Removing/inserting the rear ashtray insert

- Open the storage compartment » page 88.
- Grasp the insert in the area marked with the arrows and remove it in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 65 - [B].

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

! WARNING

Never place flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

! CAUTION

When removing do not hold the ashtray at the cover on the front – risk of breakage.

12-volt power outlet

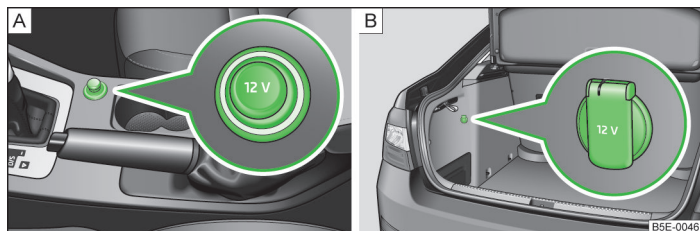


Fig. 66 12-Volt power socket: in the front centre console/ in the boot

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 79.

Overview of the 12-volt power socket

In the front centre console » Fig. 66 - [A].

In the boot » Fig. 66 - [B].

Use of the 12-volt power socket

- Remove the cover on the power socket » Fig. 66 - [A] or open the cover on the power socket as appropriate » Fig. 66 - [B].
- Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

The 12-volt power sockets and any connected appliances can also be operated when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is withdrawn » .

! WARNING

- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- If the connected electric device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.

! CAUTION

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a total power uptake of up to 120 watt.
- Never exceed the maximum power consumption, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system can be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Only use matching plugs to avoid damaging the power sockets.
- Only use accessories that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in accordance with the applicable directives.
- Switch off the devices connected to the power sockets before you switch the ignition on or off and before starting the engine, to avoid damage from voltage fluctuations.
- Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Waste container

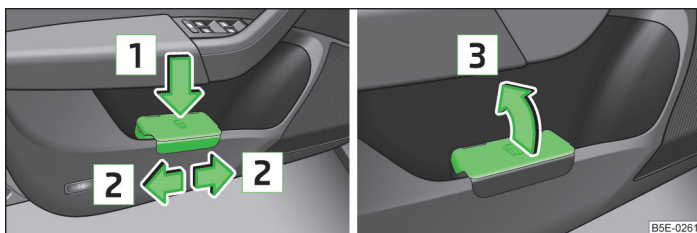


Fig. 67 Waste container / open waste container

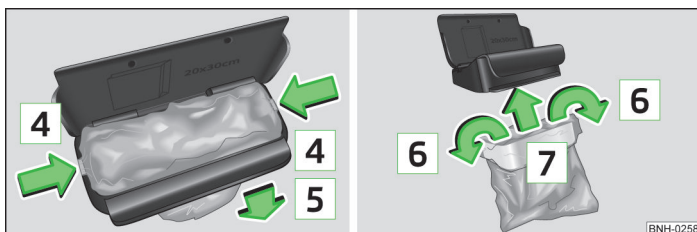


Fig. 68 Replace bags

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 79.

The waste container can be inserted into the slots in the doors » page 81.

Insert waste container

- Position the waste container at the front edge of the slot.
- Push the waste container to the back in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 67.
- Push the waste container as required in the direction of arrow .

Remove the waste container

- Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 67.

Open/close waste container

- Open the waste container in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 67.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Replace bags

- Remove the waste container from the slot.
- Push the two catches of the inner frame in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 68.
- Pull the bag together with the inner frame down in the direction of arrow .
- Remove the bag from the inside frame.
- Pull the new bag through the frame and pull it over the frame in the direction of arrow .
- Insert the bag with the frame in the direction of arrow into the container body.

The two catches of the inner frame must click into place.

WARNING

- Never use the waste container as an ashtray - risk of fire!
- Only replace the bag when the vehicle is stationary - risk of accident!

Note

We recommend that you use 20x30 cm bags.

Multimedia holder

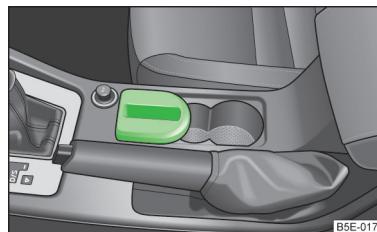


Fig. 69
Multimedia holder

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 79.

The multimedia holder is located in the front centre console » Fig. 69.

You can use this holder to store e.g. a mobile phone, MP3 player or similar devices.

! WARNING

Never use the holder as an ashtray or for storing flammable objects – risk of fire!

Storage compartment under the front armrest

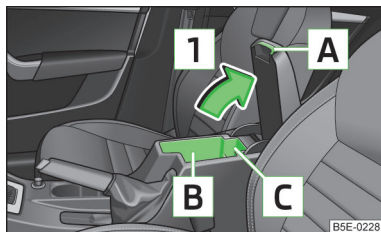


Fig. 70
Opening the storage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 79.

Opening

➤ Pull and open the cover of the armrest using the handle **A** in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 70.

Closing

➤ Open the cover to the stop, only then can it be folded downwards and against the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 70.

The area **B** » Fig. 70 of the storage compartment is designed for the storage of objects with a maximum size of 98 mm x 104 mm x 142 mm.

The area **C** of the storage compartment is designed for the storage of smaller objects.

! WARNING

For safety reasons, the storage compartment should not be opened to an end stop while driving.

Glasses storage box

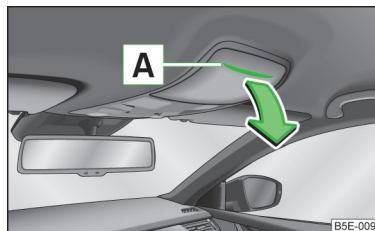


Fig. 71
Opening the glasses storage box



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 79.

Opening

➤ Press on the lid of the glasses storage box in area **A** » Fig. 71.

The box folds in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

➤ Swivel the lid of the glasses storage box against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 71 until it audibly clicks into place.

! WARNING

- The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting the spectacles and otherwise must be kept closed!
- The box must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle – risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system!

! CAUTION

Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box – they may be damaged.

Storage compartment on the passenger side

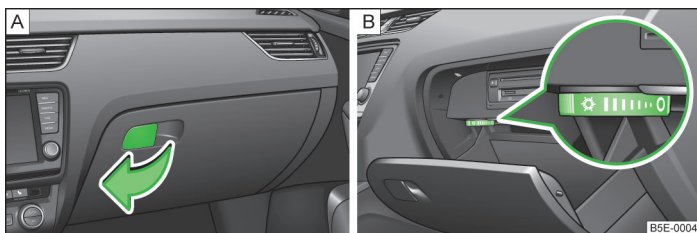


Fig. 72 Open storage compartment/control cooling of storage compartment



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 79.

A pen and credit card holder is provided in the stowage compartment.

Opening

➤ Pull the lid handle in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 72 - [A] and fold down the lid.

Closing

➤ Lift the lid upwards until it clicks into place.

Cooling

➤ Use the rotary switch » Fig. 72 - [B] to open or close the air supply.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

Opening the air inlet when the air conditioning system is on causes fresh or interior air to flow into the storage compartment.

We recommend closing the air supply if it is operated in heating mode or the cooling system for the storage compartment is not being used.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

i Note

When the stowage compartment is opened, a light lights up.

Storage compartment under the passenger seat

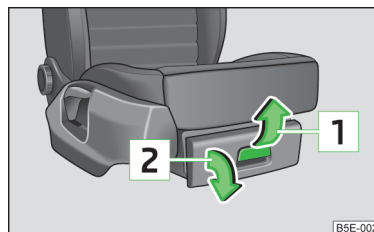


Fig. 73
Front passenger seat: Opening the storage compartment



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 79.

Opening

➤ Pull the handle to position [1] » Fig. 73 in the direction of the arrow.

The compartment opens out in the direction of the arrow [2].

Closing

➤ Grip the compartment by the handle and close in the opposite direction to that of the arrow [2] » Fig. 73.

➤ Keep hold of the handle until the compartment is closed.



WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.



CAUTION

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 1.5 kg. in weight.

Clothes hook

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 79.

The clothes hooks are located on the middle door pillars of the vehicle and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors.

WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing otherwise this may reduce the effectiveness of head airbags.
- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hooks is 2 kg.

Storage pockets on the front seats



Fig. 74
Map pockets

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 79.

Pockets for storing maps, magazines etc. are provided on the back of the front seat backrests » Fig. 74.

WARNING

Never put heavy items in the map pockets – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Never put large objects into the map pockets, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges - risk of damaging the pockets and seat coverings.

Storage compartment in rear centre console

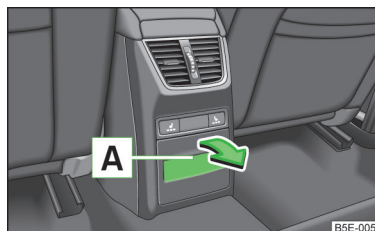


Fig. 75
Opening the storage compartment

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 79.

The storage compartment is equipped with a removable insert.

Open/close

➤ Pull the handle  » Fig. 75 on the upper section of the recess and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

WARNING

The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!

230-volt power



Fig. 76
Centre console at rear: 230-Volt power socket



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 79.

Use

- Fold out the lid on the power socket in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 76.
- Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

The 230-Volt power socket can only be used when the ignition is switched on » .

When the plug on the electrical appliance is inserted into the power socket, the child safety lock is released, and the power socket is activated.

LED display

- Permanent green light: The power socket is activated.
- Flashing red light: The power socket is temporarily deactivated.

The power socket is deactivated automatically when the amperage is too high, the temperature is too high or the battery charge state is too low.

When the reasons for the deactivation no longer apply, the power socket will be re-activated automatically. Then re-activate connected devices which are switched on » .

WARNING

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a two-pin 230V plug, with a total power uptake of up to 150 watt.
- The power socket and the connected electrical devices only work if the ignition is switched on!
- Improper use can lead to serious injury or fire. Therefore never leave children unattended in the vehicle – risk of injury!
- Safely stow away all connected devices during the journey to prevent them from being thrown around the interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident – risk of death!
- Do not pour liquids into the power socket – risk of death! If fluid does manage to get into the power socket, completely dry out the socket before reuse.
- The connected appliances may behave differently when connected to the mains.
- The connected devices may warm up during operation – risk of injury or fire!
- The child lock on the 230 Volt power socket is unlocked when using energised adapters and extension cables – risk of injury!
- Do not insert any conductive objects into the contacts of the power socket, e.g. knitting needs – risk of death!

CAUTION

- Place the connector on the electrical device into the power socket as far as it can go to create a connection between the contacts.
- If the connector of the electrical device is not inserted fully into the power socket, the child safety lock might release, and the power socket be activated. The electrical device is nevertheless not connected.
- The 230-volt power socket is temporarily disabled when the engine starts and the LED flashes red. After starting the engine, the power socket is re-activated automatically.
- Do not connect any lamps with neon filaments to the 230 V power socket – risk of damaging the lamp.
- A larger current surge may arise in some power supplies (e.g. for notebooks) when connecting them to a 230 V power socket- this will automatically deactivate the power socket. In this case, disconnect the power supply from the consumer and connect the power supply to the power socket first, followed by the consumer.
- Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Rear seat backrest with long-cargo channel

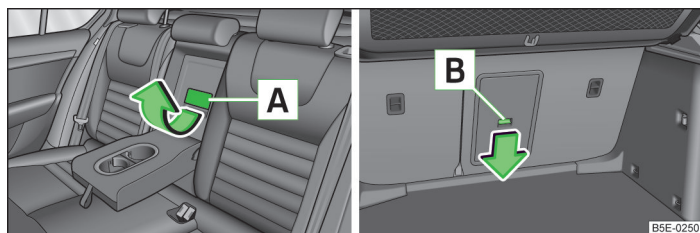


Fig. 77 Rear seats: Cover handle/boot: Unlock button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 79.

After folding the rear armrest and cover up, an opening in the seat backrest becomes visible through which the removable through-loading bag with skis can be pushed. The armrest and cover can be folded forward from the passenger compartment or the boot.

Opening from the passenger compartment

- Fold the rear armrest down (not as far as the stop) » page 77.
- Pull the handle **A** » Fig. 77 in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover downwards.

Opening from the boot

- Push the unlock button **B** » Fig. 77 in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover including the armrest forwards.

Closing

- Fold the cover and rear armrest upwards to the stop - the cover must click into place.

Ensure that the armrest is always locked into place after closing. This is apparent as the red field above the unlocking button **B** » Fig. 77 is not visible from the boot.

WARNING

The through-loading channel is only intended for transporting skis that are placed in a properly secured, removable through-loading bag » page 90.

Removable ski bag

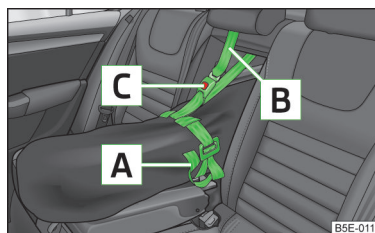


Fig. 78
Securing the through-loading bag



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 79.

The removable through-loading bag is solely used for transporting skis.

Loading

- Open the boot lid.
- Fold the rear armrest and the cover in the seat backrest downwards » page 90.
- Place the empty, removable through-loading bag in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip is in the boot.
- Push the skis into the removable through-loading bag from the boot » .
- Close the through-loading bag.

Securing

- Tighten the strap **A** on the free end around the skis in front of the bindings » Fig. 78.
- Fold the seat backrest a little forward.
- Guide the securing strap **B** through the opening in the seat backrest around the upper part of the seat backrest.
- Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the unlocking button clicks into place - check by pulling on the seat backrest.
- Insert the securing strap **B** into the lock **C** until it clicks into place.

WARNING

- After placing skis into the through-loading bag, you must secure the bag with the securing strap **B** » Fig. 78.
- The strap **A** must hold the skis tight.

WARNING (Continued)

- Make sure that the strap  holds the skis in front of the binding (also refer to imprint on the removable through-loading bag).
- The total weight of the skis which are transported must not exceed 24 kg.

Note

- The through-loading bag is foreseen for four pairs of skis.
- Place the skis with the tips facing to the front and the sticks with the tips facing to the rear. into the removable through-loading bag.
- If there are several pairs of skis in the removable through-loading bag, ensure that the bindings are positioned at the same height.
- The removable through-loading bag must never be folded together or stowed when moist.

Luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Class N1 vehicles	92
Fastening elements	92
Fixing nets	93
Folding double hooks	93
Foldable hooks (Octavia Estate)	94
Floor covering	94
Double sided floor covering	94
Luggage net	95
Luggage compartment cover	95
Roll-up luggage compartment cover (Octavia Estate)	96
Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover and roof racks	97
Storage compartment in the luggage compartment	98
Storage compartments under the floor covering	98
Multifunction box (Octavia Estate)	99

Please observe the following for the purpose of maintaining good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

- Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
- Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
- Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or using the nets » [page 92](#).

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg " ".

Luggage compartment light

The light switches on/off when the boot lid is opened or closed.

If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

WARNING

- Store the objects in the luggage compartment and attach them to the lashing eyes.
- Loose objects can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other road users.
- Loose objects could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – danger of death!
- Please note that the handling properties of the vehicle may be affected when transporting heavy objects as the centre of gravity can be displaced – risk of accident! The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.
- If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. To prevent items of luggage from moving around, always use suitable lashing straps which must be firmly attached to the lashing eyes.
- The items carried in the luggage compartment must be stored in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward if any sudden driving or braking manoeuvres are undertaken – risk of injury!

! WARNING (Continued)

- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats » [page 178](#), *Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats*.
- Do not drive with the luggage compartment lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Do not transport people in the boot!

! CAUTION

Make sure that transported objects with sharp edges do not damage the threads of the following devices.

- Rear window heater.
- Rear window with an integrated antenna.
- Integrated antenna in the rear side windows (Octavia Estate).

i Note

Tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load » [page 229](#), *Service life of tyres*.

Class N1 vehicles



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 91.

In class N1 vehicles that are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set that complies with the EN 12195 standard (1-4) must be used for fastening the load.

Proper functioning of the electrical installation is essential for safe vehicle operation. It is important to ensure that the electrical installation is not damaged during the adjustment process or when the storage area is being loaded and unloaded.

¹⁾ The upper front lashing eye is located underneath the folding rear seat backrest.

Fastening elements

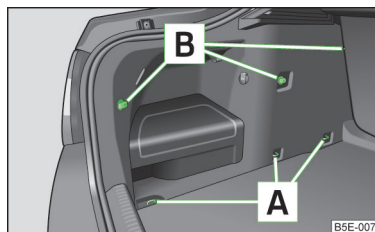


Fig. 79
Fastening elements Octavia

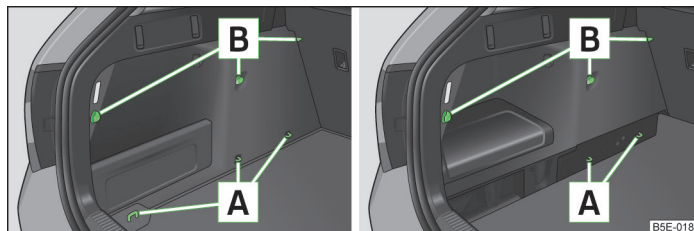


Fig. 80 Fastening elements Octavia Estate: Equipment without variable loading floor/equipment with variable loading floor



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 91.

The luggage compartment comprises the following fastening elements. » [Fig. 79](#) or » [Fig. 80](#).

- A** Lashing eyes for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets.
- B** Fastening elements and loops¹⁾ **only** for fastening fixing nets.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible static load of the individual lashing eyes **A** is 3.5 kN (350 kg).

Fixing nets

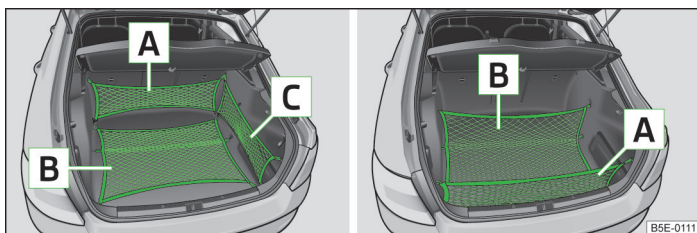


Fig. 81 Fastening examples for nets

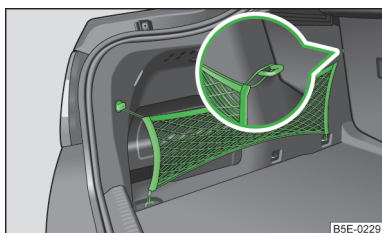


Fig. 82
Fastening vertical pocket



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 91.

Examples for attaching the fixing nets » Fig. 81.

- A** Horizontal pocket
- B** Floor net
- C** Vertical pocket

! WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the fixing nets. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!



CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the fixing nets is 1.5 kg.
- Do not place any sharp objects in the nets – risk of damaging the net.

Folding double hooks

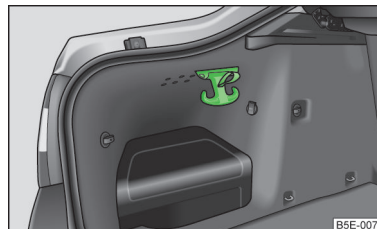


Fig. 83
Folding double hooks



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 91.

The folding double hook is used to affix small items of luggage, e.g. bags.

The folding double hook can be located on either of the two sides of the luggage compartment, according to the model.



CAUTION

An item of luggage with a maximum weight of 5 kg can be attached to each side of the double hook.

Foldable hooks (Octavia Estate)

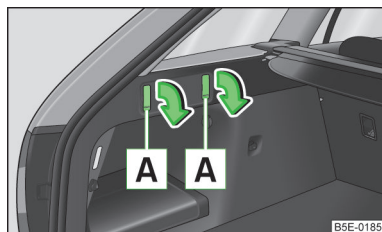


Fig. 84
Foldable hooks

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 91.

Foldable hooks for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., are provided on both sides of the luggage compartment.

➤ Press on the lower portion of the hook  and then fold it in direction of the arrow » Fig. 84.

The front foldable hooks are also used to fasten the rear bar of the multifunction pocket » page 99.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7 kg.

Floor covering

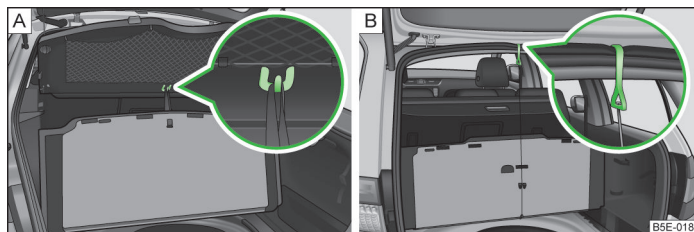


Fig. 85 Fixing the floor covering: Octavia/Octavia Estate

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 91.

The raised floor covering of the luggage compartment can be fixed (e.g. when handling the spare wheel):

- Octavia: With the loop on a hook on the luggage compartment cover » Fig. 85 - .
- Octavia Estate: With the hook on the frame of the luggage compartment lid » Fig. 85 - .

CAUTION

The floor covering can be fixed with the Octavia Estate vehicle only if the variable loading floor is folded in the upper position » Fig. 99 on page 101.

Double sided floor covering

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 91.

You can fit a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment.

One side of the double-sided floor covering is made of fabric, the other side is washable (easy to maintain).

The washable side is used to transport wet or dirty items.

! CAUTION

The double sided floor covering can only be used in vehicles without the variable loading floor » page 99 - There is a risk of damage to the variable loading floor.

i Note

For easier turning of the covering, use the loop attached.

Luggage net

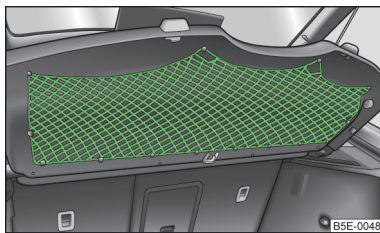


Fig. 86
Luggage net



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 91.

The luggage net is located on the underside of the luggage compartment cover. The net is designed for transporting lighter objects.

! WARNING

Only store soft objects with a total weight of 1.5 kg in the net. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently - risk of injury!

! CAUTION

Do not place any sharp objects into the net - risk of net damage.

Luggage compartment cover

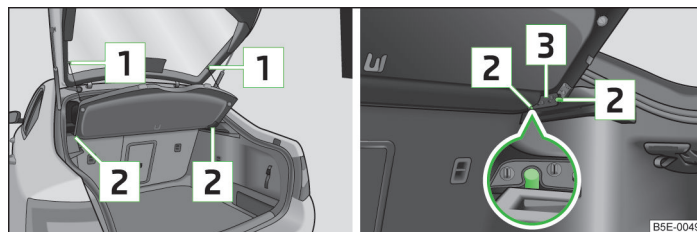


Fig. 87 Removing/installing the luggage compartment cover

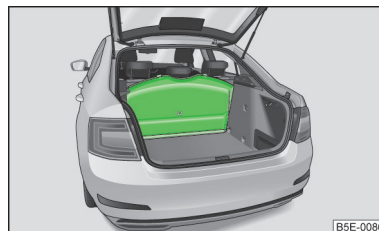


Fig. 88
Luggage compartment cover
stowed behind the rear seats



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 91.

Removing

- Unhook support straps **1** » Fig. 87.
- On the underside of the cover, in the area between the holders, press **2**.
- Remove the cover.

The removed boot cover can be stowed behind the seat backrest » Fig. 88.

Installing

- Place the cover on the contact surfaces of the side trim panel.
- Place the recesses of the cover **3** » Fig. 87 over the holders **2** in the side trim panel.
- Press on the upper side of the cover so that the mounts fully interlock in the holders.
- Hook the support straps **1** on the boot lid.

! WARNING

No objects should be placed on the luggage compartment cover, the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.

! CAUTION

- Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of objects placed in this area.
- When closing the boot lid, jamming and damage to the luggage compartment cover or the side trim panel can occur if handled in an unprofessional way. The following guidelines must be observed.
 - The recesses in the cover **3** » Fig. 87 must lock in the holders in the side trim panel **2**.
 - The items which are transported must not exceed the height of the luggage compartment cover.
 - The cover must not be jammed in the surrounding seal of the luggage compartment lid when it is in the opened position.
 - There must be no object in the gap between the opened cover and the rear backrest.

i Note

Opening the boot lid also lifts up the boot cover.

Roll-up luggage compartment cover (Octavia Estate)

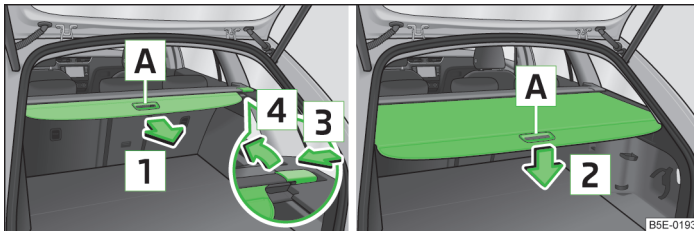


Fig. 89 Pull out and remove the roll-up luggage compartment cover/roll up roll-up luggage compartment cover



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 91.

Extending

- Grasp the cover on the handle **A** » Fig. 89 and pull it out in the direction of the arrow **1** until it clicks.

Retracting

- Push the cover in the area of the handle **A** » Fig. 89 in the direction of the arrow **2**.

The cover rolls up automatically.

Removing/inserting

The fully rolled-up luggage compartment cover can be removed (e.g. for the transport of bulky objects).

- Push on the side of the crossbar in the direction of the arrow **3** » Fig. 89 and remove the cover in the direction of the arrow **4**.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

The removed luggage compartment cover can be stowed in the storage compartment under the variable loading floor » page 97, *Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover and roof racks*.

! WARNING

No objects should be placed on the foldable boot cover.

Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover and roof racks

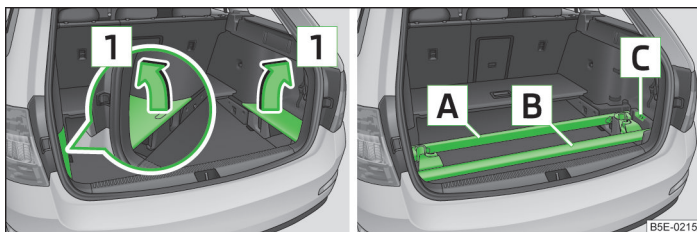


Fig. 90 Removing the side covers/stowing roof racks properly

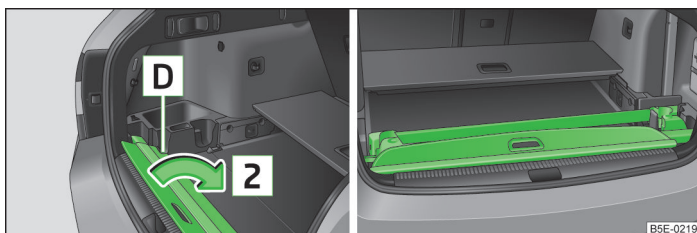


Fig. 91 Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover/stowing roof racks and roll-up luggage compartment cover properly



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 91.

If the vehicle is equipped with the variable loading floor, the removed roll-up luggage compartment cover and the roof racks can be stowed in the recesses of the luggage compartment side trim.

Stowing the roof racks

- Fold the variable loading floor in the upper position » page 101.
- Remove the side covers of the luggage compartment in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 90.
- Insert the front roof rack **A** into the front recesses of the side trim.
- Insert the rear roof rack **B** into the rear recesses of the side trim.

- Replace the side trims of the luggage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow **1**.
- Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position » page 100.

Stowing the roll-up luggage compartment cover

- Fold the variable loading floor in the upper position » page 101.
- Remove the side covers of the luggage compartment in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 90.
- Insert the front part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover under a portion of the side trim **D** » Fig. 91 on the left.
- Fold the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Replace the side trims of the luggage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 90.
- Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position » page 100.

When stowing **both** the roof rack and the roll-up luggage compartment cover, the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover should overlap the rear roof rack » Fig. 91.



Note

- Before stowing the roof rack, pull out the key from the carrier, otherwise it could be damaged.
- The keys to the roof rack can be stowed in the recess **C** » Fig. 90.

Storage compartment in the luggage compartment

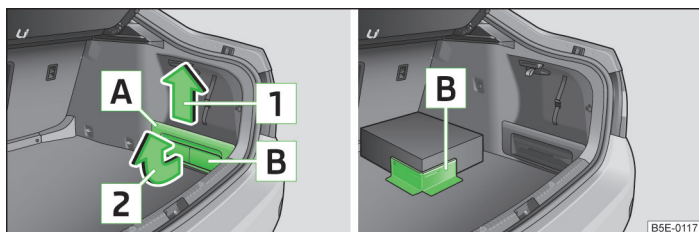


Fig. 92 Removing storage compartment and cargo element/example of attaching an item of luggage using the cargo element

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 91.

Increasing the size of the boot

➤ Remove the cover of the storage compartment **A** in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 92.

Securing items of luggage

➤ Remove the cargo element **B** (part of the cover of the storage compartment) in the direction of the arrow **2** » Fig. 92.

➤ Secure the cargo element with Velcro on the floor covering of the luggage compartment.

The storage compartment can be located on either of the two sides of the luggage compartment, according to the model.

CAUTION

- The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 2.5 kg. in weight in total.
- The cargo element is designed for attaching objects with a maximum gross weight of 8 kg.
- When using the storage compartment, take care not to damage it or the luggage compartment lining.

Note

We recommend you use the cargo element to secure items of luggage behind the rear seats.

Storage compartments under the floor covering

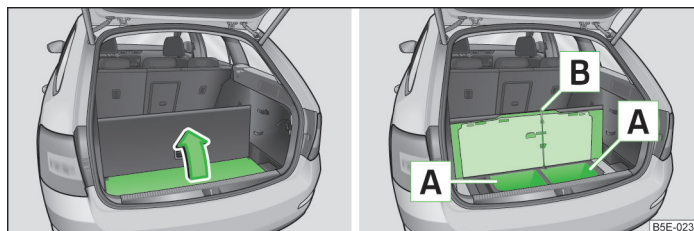


Fig. 93 Lift floor covering/storage compartments under the floor covering

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 91.

The storage compartments are located under the floor covering of the luggage compartment in vehicles without a spare wheel.

Use

- Dividing the luggage compartment with variable loading floor » page 101.
- Remove the floor covering in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 93.
- Fix the hook **B** to the top edge of the variable loading floor.

It is possible to store also objects with larger heights in the storage compartments **A**, thereby using the maximum height of the luggage compartment.

CAUTION

- An item of luggage weighing up to 15 kg can be stored in each storage compartment.
- Do not store any sharp objects in the storage compartments.
- Do not load the storage compartments at specific points or they may be damaged.
- Place the objects carefully into the storage compartments to avoid damage to the compartments.

Multifunction box (Octavia Estate)

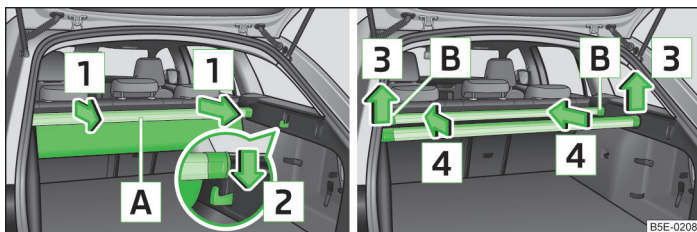


Fig. 94 Multifunction pocket: withdrawing / sliding in

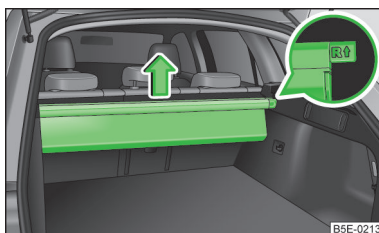


Fig. 95
Remove multifunction box



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 91.

The multifunction box under the roll-up luggage compartment cover is provided for the storage of clothing and light objects with no sharp edges.

Extending

- Fold down the front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment » page 94.
- Grasp the rear bar **A** » Fig. 94 with both hands and withdraw the complete pocket in the direction of the arrow **1**.
- Place the rear bar onto the two hooks that are folded forward in the direction of the arrow **2** all the way to the stop.

Pushing in

- Remove the rear bar from the hook in the direction of the arrow **3** » Fig. 94.
- Push in the complete multifunction box in the direction of the arrow **4**.

- Place the rear bar against the front bar and press them together at both ends **B**.
- Fold back the front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment.

Removing/inserting

- Remove the roll-up luggage compartment cover » page 96.
- Remove the multifunction box from the receptacle in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 95.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

- When inserting, push the end of the bar marked **R** into the right receptacle and the end of the bar marked **L** into the left receptacle. The arrows should be pointing forward » Fig. 95.



CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the multifunction box is 3 kg.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Positions of the variable loading floor	100
Fold up variable loading floor	101
Dividing the luggage compartment	101

The variable loading floor makes handling of bulky items of luggage easier.



CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg. For the transport of heavy loads, adjust the variable loading floor in the lower position » page 100.



Note

The space below the variable loading floor can be used for stowing objects, for example, the removed roll-up luggage compartment cover, roof cross bars, etc. » page 97.

Positions of the variable loading floor

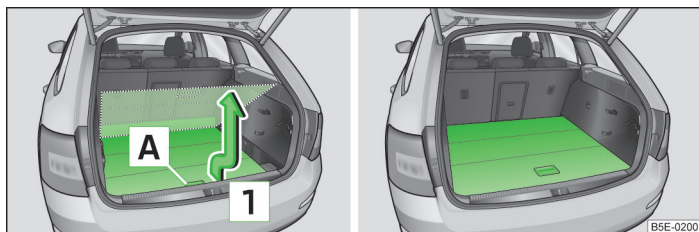


Fig. 96 Set variable loading floor to the upper position / variable loading floor in the upper position

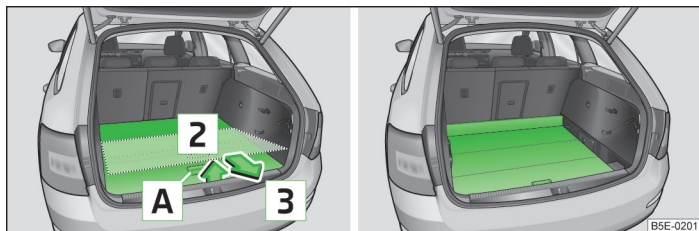


Fig. 97 Set variable loading floor to the lower position / variable loading floor in the lower position



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 99.

The variable loading floor can be set to the upper or lower position.

Set to the upper position

- Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle **A** » Fig. 96.
- Lift the variable loading floor about 20 cm, pull it to yourself and raise it in the direction of the arrow **1** to the level of the roll-up luggage compartment cover until it clicks.

After an audible click, the variable loading floor can be stowed in the upper position by pushing it forward.

The room under the variable loading floor can be used to store away objects.

Set into the lower position

- Check that there are no objects in the space under the variable loading floor.
- Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle **A** » Fig. 97.
- Lift the variable loading floor about 10 cm in the direction of the arrow **2** and pull it back in the direction of the arrow **3**.

The variable loading floor moves automatically to the lower position where it can be stored by pressing it forward.

The variable loading floor can be folded up in both positions » page 101 or used for dividing the luggage compartment » page 101.

Fold up variable loading floor

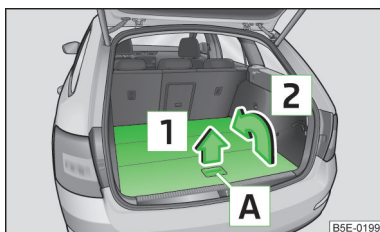


Fig. 98
fold up variable loading floor

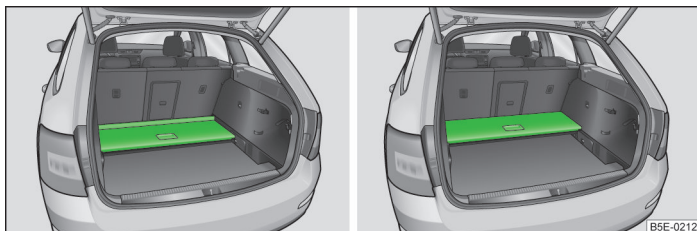


Fig. 99 Variable load floor when folded: in the lower position / in the upper position

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 99.

The variable loading floor can be folded up in the lower and the upper position » Fig. 99.

- Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle **A** » Fig. 98 and lift in the direction of the arrow **1**.
- Fold up the variable loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow **2**.

Dividing the luggage compartment

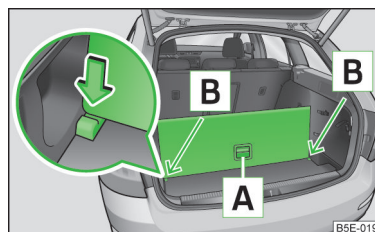


Fig. 100
Dividing the boot with variable loading floor

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 99.

The luggage compartment can be divided with the variable loading floor in the lower and upper position.

- Raise the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle **A** » Fig. 100.
- Push the rear edge of the variable loading floor into the grooves **B** in the direction of the arrow.

The variable loading floor is secured against movements in the grooves **B**.

Net partition (Octavia Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Using the net partition behind the rear seats _____ 102
- Using the net partition behind the front seats _____ 103
- Removing and refitting the net partition housing _____ 103 ➤

! WARNING

- Check that the crossbar of the net partition is hung firmly into the receptacles **D** » Fig. 101 on page 102 and **C** » Fig. 103 on page 103.
- The belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat backrests – they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely locked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment on sudden braking – risk of injury.
- Ensure that the rear seat backrests are properly engaged. Only then can the seat belt for the middle seat reliably fulfil its function.

Using the net partition behind the rear seats

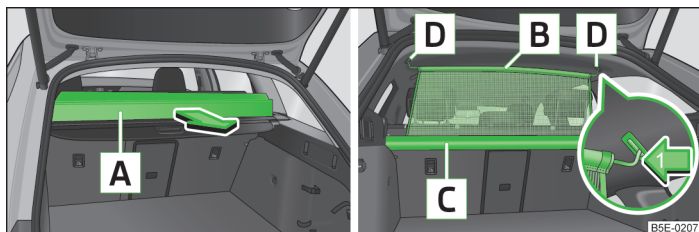


Fig. 101 Folding out part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover/net partition behind the rear seats in the pulled-out state

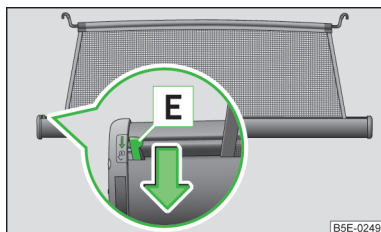


Fig. 102
Net partition: Release lever



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 101.

Extending

- Fold out part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover **A** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 101.
- Pull out the net partition at the upper crossbar **B** from the housing **C**.
- Hook the crossbar into one of the receptacles **D**.
- On the other side, press on the crossbar and hook it into the appropriate receptacle **D**.

If the cross-bar is hooked into the receptacle **D** for example, the press on the cross bar in the direction of arrow 1 and insert into the receptacle to the right **D**.

- Fold back part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover **A** in the opposite direction of the arrow.

Retracting

- Fold out part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover **A** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 101.
- Press on the crossbar and remove it from the receptacles **D**, first on one side, then on the other side.
- Hold the crossbar **B** in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up into the housing **C** without being damaged.
- Fold back part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover **A** in the opposite direction of the arrow.

! CAUTION

If the net partition blocks when pulling it out of the housing, push the release lever **E** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 102.

i Note

If you wish to use the entire luggage compartment, the roll-up luggage compartment cover can be removed » page 96.

Using the net partition behind the front seats

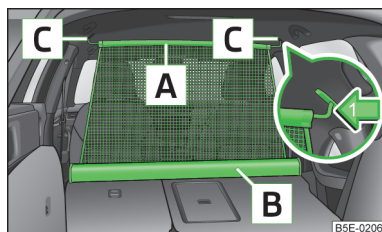


Fig. 103
Net partition behind the front seats in the pulled-out state

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 101.

Extending

- Fold the rear seats forward » page 78.
- Pull out the net partition at the upper crossbar **A** from the housing **B** » Fig. 103.
- Hook the crossbar into one of the receptacles **C**.
- On the other side, press on the crossbar and hook it into the appropriate receptacle **C**.

If the crossbar is hooked into the receptacle **C** to the left for example, then press on the crossbar in the direction of the arrow 1 and insert into the receptacle **C** to the right.

Retracting

- Press on the crossbar and remove it from the receptacles **C**, first on one side, then on the other side.
- Hold the crossbar **A** in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up into the housing **B** without being damaged.
- Fold the rear seats back into their original positions » page 78.

CAUTION

If the net partition blocks when pulling it out of the housing, push the release lever **E** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 102 on page 102.

Removing and refitting the net partition housing

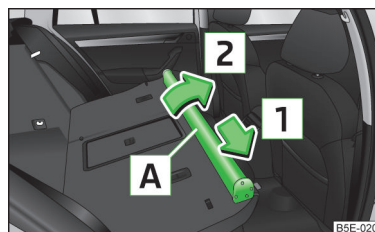


Fig. 104
Rear seats: Removing the net partition housing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 101.

Removing

- Fold the rear seats forward » page 78.
- Open the rear right door » page 40.
- Push the net partition housing **A** in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove it from the mounts on the right seat backrests in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 104.

Installing

- Insert the recesses on the net partition housing into the mounts on the rear seat backrests.
- Push the net partition housing in the opposite direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 104 as far as the stop.
- Fold the rear seats back into their original positions » page 78.

Roof rack system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Attachment points	104
Roof load	105

! WARNING

- The items which you transport on the roof rack must be reliably attached – risk of accident!
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, the handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and gross permissible weight of the vehicle must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

- Only use roof rack systems approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s.
- When dealing with roof rack systems, the installation instructions supplied with the roof luggage rack system must be observed.
- On models fitted with a sliding/tilting roof, ensure that the sliding/tilting roof does not strike any items of luggage transported on the roof.
- Ensure that the luggage compartment lid does not hit the roof load when opened.
- The height of the vehicle changes after mounting a roof luggage rack system and the load that is secured to it. Compare the vehicle height with available clearances, such as underpasses and garage doors.
- Always remove the roof luggage rack system before entering an automated car wash.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the secured load.



For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption.

i Note

The removed roof rack for the Octavia Estate can be stowed in the stowage compartment under the variable loading floor » [page 97](#), *Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover and roof racks*.

Attachment points

Does not apply to the Octavia Estate.

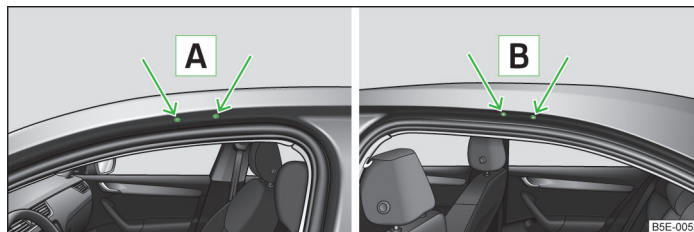


Fig. 105 Attachment points for roof bars



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 103.

Installation position of the attachment points for roof bars » [Fig. 105](#):

- A** Front attachment points
- B** Rear attachment points

Perform the assembly and disassembly according to the enclosed instructions.

! CAUTION

Observe the information regarding the assembly and disassembly in the enclosed instructions.

Roof load



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 103.

The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **75 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. In this case, the roof rack system must only be loaded up to the maximum weight limit specified in the fitting instructions. ■

Heating and air-conditioning

Heating, ventilation, cooling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Air outlets	107
Using the cooling system economically	107
Operational problems	108

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The cooling system prevents the windows from misting up during the cold season of the year.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode to enhance the cooling effect.

Please refer to the information regarding recirculated air mode for the air-conditioning system » [page 111](#) or for Climatronic » [page 114](#).

WARNING

For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. Please familiarize yourself about how to correctly operate the heating and ventilation systems, how to demist and defrost the windows, as well as with the cooling mode.

CAUTION

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of e.g. ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!

Note

- The used air streams out through the vents in the luggage compartment.
- We recommend that you do not smoke in the vehicle when the recirculating air mode is operating since the smoke which is drawn at the evaporator from the interior of the vehicle forms deposits in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Air outlets

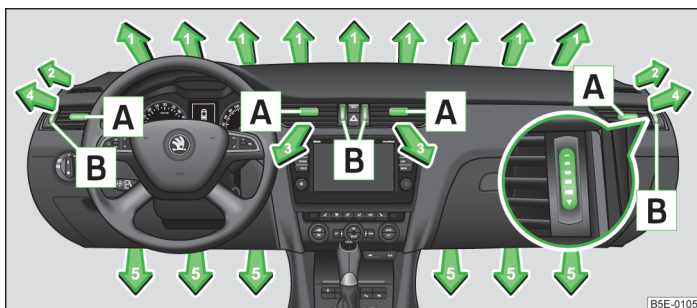


Fig. 106 Air vents at the front

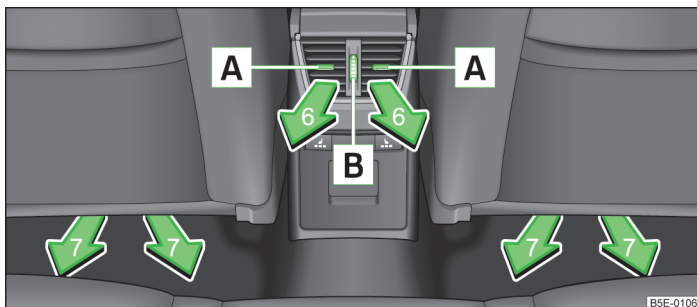


Fig. 107 Air vents at the rear

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 106.

Warmed, unwarmed or cooled air will flow out of the air outlet vents according to the setting of the regulator of the heating or the air conditioning system and the atmospheric conditions.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3, 4** » Fig. 106 and **6** » Fig. 107 - the outlets can be opened and closed individually.

Changing the air flow direction

- » To change the height of the air flow, swivel the horizontal fins with the movable adjuster **A** » Fig. 106 or » Fig. 107 upward or downward.
- » To change the lateral direction of the air flow, turn the vertical fins with the movable adjuster **A** » Fig. 106 or » Fig. 107 to the left or right.

Open/close

- » Turn the regulator **B** » Fig. 106 or » Fig. 107 upwards or downwards.

An overview of the available settings for adjusting the direction of the air outlet.

Setting the direction of the air outlet	Active air outlet vents
	1, 2, 4
	1, 2, 4, 5, 7
	3, 4, 6
	4, 5, 7
	3, 4, 5, 6, 7

Note

Do not cover the air outlet vents with any objects, of any kind.

Using the cooling system economically

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 106.

The air conditioning system compressor uses power from the engine when in cooling mode, which will affect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be on if the windows are open.

 For the sake of the environment

Pollutant emissions are also reduced when fuel is saved » [page 131](#), *Economical driving and environmental sustainability*.

Operational problems

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 106.**

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. The reasons for this may be.

- One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » [page 253](#).
- The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot » [page 13](#).

If you are not able to resolve the operational problem yourself, or if the cooler output has reduced, switch off the cooling system and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Heating

 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Control elements	108
Adjusting	109
Recirculated air mode	109

Control elements

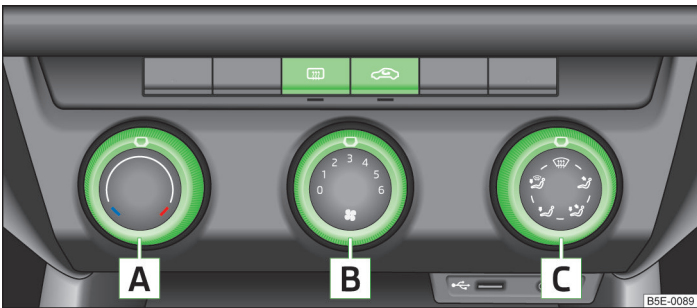


Fig. 108 Heating: Control elements

 **First read and observe the introductory information given on page 108.**

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 108.

- A** Set the temperature (turn to the left to reduce the temperature, turn to the right to increase the temperature)
- B** Set the blower stage (stage 0: Fan out, stage 6: the highest fan speed)
- C** Set the direction of the air outlet » [page 107](#)
-  Switching the rear window heater on/off » [page 64](#)
-  Open/close the fresh air supply (recirculation) » [page 109](#)

 WARNING
The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting up.

Adjusting



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 108.

Recommended basic settings of the heating controls.

Adjustment	Control dial settings » Fig. 108 on page 108			Button	Air outlet vents 4 » Fig. 106 on page 107
Defrosting the windscreen and side windows	To the right up to the stop	4 - 5		Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
Free windscreen and side windows from mist	Desired temperature	3 - 5		Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
Rapid heating	As far as it will go to the right	4 - 5		Briefly switch on	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2 - 4		Do not switch on	Opening
Fresh air mode – ventilation	To the left up to the stop	1 - 6		Do not switch on	Opening

^{a)} Warmer air is directed to the footwell than to the upper part of the body.

We recommend that you leave the air outlet vents 3 » Fig. 106 on page 107 in the open position in all operating modes.

Recirculated air mode



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 108.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching on/off

➤ Press the symbol button .

The warning light below the button lights up.

➤ Press the symbol button again.

The warning light below the button goes out.

Recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control » Fig. 108 on page 108 is turned to position . Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this position by repeatedly pressing the symbol button .



WARNING

Never leave recirculated air mode switched on over a longer period of time, as "stale air" can cause driver and passenger fatigue, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Air conditioning system (manual air conditioning system)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Control elements	110
adjusting	111
Recirculated air mode	111

The cooling system only operates if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The cooling system is switched on » [page 110](#), *Control elements*.
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The outside temperature above approx. +2 °C.
- ✓ The blower switch is switched on (positions 1-6).

If the desired interior temperature can also be achieved without activating the cooling system, fresh air mode should be selected.

The cooling system is switched off at a high coolant temperature in order to provide cooling at a high load of the engine.

CAUTION

- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.
- Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (especially around the feet) and large differences in temperature, for example, when getting out of the vehicle, can cause susceptible individuals to catch a cold.

Note

We recommend that you have the air conditioning system cleaned by a specialist garage once every year.

Control elements

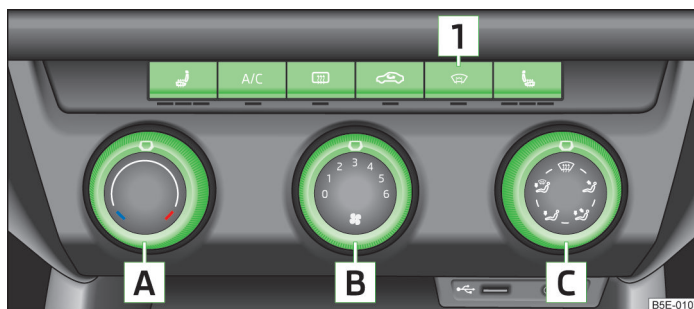


Fig. 109 Air conditioning: Control elements

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 110.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 109.

- A** Set the temperature (turn to the left to reduce the temperature, turn to the right to increase the temperature)
- B** Set the blower stage (stage 0: Fan out, stage 6: the highest fan speed)
- C** Set the direction of the air outlet » [page 107](#)
- 1** Depending on equipment:
 - > Switching the windscreen heater on/off » [page 64](#)
 - > Aux. heating on/off » [page 116](#)
- Control the seat heater on the front left seat » [page 76](#)
- A/C** Switching the cooling system on/off
- Switching the rear window heater on/off » [page 64](#)
- Open/close the fresh air supply (recirculation) » [page 111](#)
- Control the seat heater on the front right seat » [page 76](#)

Note

The warning light in the symbol button **A/C** lights after activation, even if not all of the conditions for the function of the cooling system are met » [page 110](#). By lighting up of the warning light in the button, the operational readiness of the cooling system is signalled.

adjusting



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 110.

Recommended basic settings of the air conditioning controls.

Adjustment	Control dial settings » Fig. 109 on page 110			Button » Fig. 109 on page 110		Air outlet vents 4 » Fig. 106 on page 107
	A	B	C	A/C		
Defrost/defog windscreen and side windows ^{a)}	Desired temperature	4 - 6		Automatically switched on ^{b)}	Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
Rapid heating	As far as it will go to the right	4 - 6		Switched off	Briefly switch on	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	1 - 4		Switched off	Do not switch on	Opening
Rapid cooling	To the left up to the stop	briefly 6, then 2 - 3		Activated	Automatically switched on ^{c)}	Opening
Comfortable cooling	Desired temperature	1 - 3		Activated	Do not switch on	Opening
Fresh air mode - ventilation	To the left up to the stop	Desired position		Switched off	Do not switch on	Opening

^{a)} We recommend that you do not use this setting in countries with high humidity levels. This can result in heavy cooling of the window glass and the following fogging from outside.

^{b)} Automatic switch-on can be deactivated by pressing the symbol button A/C.

^{c)} The automatic activation can be turned off by pressing the symbol button .

^{d)} Warmer air is directed to the footwell than to the upper part of the body.

We recommend that you leave the air outlet vents 3 » Fig. 106 on page 107 in the open position in all operating modes.

Recirculated air mode



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 110.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching on/off

➤ Press the symbol button .

The warning light below the button lights up.

➤ Press the symbol button  again.

The warning light below the button goes out.

Recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control  » Fig. 109 on page 110 is turned to position . Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this position by repeatedly pressing the symbol button .

! WARNING

Never leave recirculated air mode switched on over a longer period of time, as "stale air" can cause driver and passenger fatigue, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Control elements	112
Automatic mode	113
Switching the cooling system on/off	113
Setting temperature	113
Automatic recirculation mode	114
Controlling blower	114
Defrosting windscreen	115

The Climatronic in **automatic mode** ensures the best-possible setting of the temperature of the outflowing air, the blower stage and air distribution.

The system also takes sunlight into account, which eliminates the need to alter the settings manually.

The cooling system only operates if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The cooling system is switched on » [page 112](#), *Control elements*.
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The outside temperature above approx. +2 °C.

The cooling system is switched off at a high coolant temperature in order to provide cooling at a high load of the engine.

i Note

We recommend that you have Climatronic cleaned by a specialist garage once every year.

Control elements

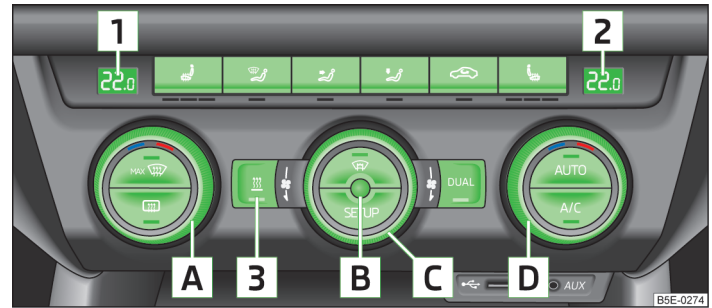


Fig. 110 Climatronic: Control elements



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 112.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 110.

- A** Adjust the temperature for the left side or for both sides » [page 113](#)
- B** Interior temperature sensor
- C** Adjust the blower speed » [page 114](#)
- D** Adjust the temperature for the right side » [page 113](#)
- 1** Display the temperature setting for the left side
- 2** Display the temperature setting for the right side
- 3** Depending on equipment:
 - > Aux. heating on/off » [page 116](#)
 - > **OFF** Switching Climatronic system off
- Control the seat heater on the front left seat » [page 76](#)
- Air flow to the windows
- Air flow to the upper body
- Air flow in the footwell
- Automatic recirculation switch on or off » [page 114](#)
- Control the seat heater on the front right seat » [page 76](#)
- Switch the intensive windscreen heater on/off » [page 115](#)
- Switching the rear window heater on/off » [page 64](#)

 Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 64

SETUP Climatronic set in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*

DUAL Switch the temperature setting in Dual mode on/off » page 113

AUTO Switching automatic mode on » page 113

A/C Switching the cooling system on/off » page 113

Note

Do not stick anything onto or cover the interior temperature sensor  » Fig. 110 as this could impair the functioning of the Climatronic.

Automatic mode



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 112.

Automatic mode works in three modes - moderate, medium, and intensive.

Setting the individual operating modes » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.

Climatronic is set to the medium setting at the factory.

Recommended setting for all periods of the year

- Set the desired temperature, we recommend 22 °C.
- Press the button **AUTO** » Fig. 110 on page 112.
- Set the air outlet vents **3** and **4** » Fig. 106 on page 107 so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.

After the automatic mode is switched on, Climatronic works in the last selected mode.

The currently selected mode is displayed in the Infotainment display.

Automatic mode can be **switched off** by pressing one of the buttons for the air distribution or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed.

Switching the cooling system on/off



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 112.

- Press the symbol button **A/C**.

The warning light in the button lights up.

- Press the symbol button **A/C** again.

The warning light in the button goes out.

After the cooling system is switched off, only the ventilation function remains active whereby the minimum temperature that can be reached is the outside temperature.

Setting temperature



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 112.

The interior temperature for the left and right side can be set separately or together.

For both sides

- Turn the control dial  » Fig. 110 on page 112 to the left or right to increase or decrease the temperature.

The warning light in the symbol button **DUAL** does not light up.

For the right side

- Turn the control dial  » Fig. 110 on page 112 to the left or right to increase or decrease the temperature.

The warning light in the symbol button **DUAL** lights up.

If the warning light in the symbol button **DUAL** is lit, the temperature for both sides cannot be set with the control dial . This function can be resumed by pressing the symbol button **DUAL**. The warning light in the button goes out.

The interior temperature can be set between +16 °C and +29 °C. The interior temperature is regulated automatically within this range.

If a temperature lower than +16 °C is selected, a blue symbol lights up on the corresponding control dial.

If a temperature higher than +29 °C is selected, a red symbol lights up on the corresponding control dial.

At both end positions, Climatronic runs at maximum cooling/heating output and the temperature is automatically not regulated.

! CAUTION

Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (especially around the feet) and large differences in temperature, for example, when getting out of the vehicle, can cause susceptible individuals to catch a cold.

Automatic recirculation mode



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 112.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

If a considerable increase in concentration of pollutants is recognised by the air quality sensor, recirculated air mode will temporarily be switched off.

If the concentration of pollutants decreases to the normal level, the air distribution control is automatically switched off so that fresh air can be guided into the vehicle interior.

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior. When the automatic air distribution control is switched on, an air quality sensor measures the concentration of pollutants in the drawn in air.

If the air quality sensor does not switch on automatic recirculated air mode when there is an unpleasant smell, you can switch in on manually.

Switching on/off

➤ Press the symbol button .

The warning light below the button lights up.

➤ Press the symbol button  again; the warning light below the button goes out; if necessary, press the symbol button **AUTO** again.

Switching on and off is also possible in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.

! WARNING

Never leave recirculated air mode switched on over a longer period of time, as "stale air" can cause driver and passenger fatigue, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

i Note

- If the windscreen mists up, press the symbol button **MAX** . Press the symbol button **AUTO** when the windscreen is demisted.
- The automatic air distribution control operates only if the outside temperature is higher than approx. 2 °C.

Controlling blower



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 112.

The blower stage can be manually adapted to suit your particular needs.

➤ Turn the control dial  » Fig. 110 on page 112 to the left or right to increase or decrease the temperature.

If the blower speed is reduced to a minimum, Climatronic is switched off.

The set blower speed is displayed in the control dial  when the respective number of warning lights illuminate.

! WARNING

- "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases.
- Do not switch off the Climatronic system for longer than necessary.
- Switch on the Climatronic system as soon as the windows mist up.

Defrosting windscreen



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 112.

Switching on/off

- Press the symbol button » Fig. 110 on page 112.
- Press the symbol button again or press the symbol button **AUTO**.

More air flows out of the air outlet vents 1 » Fig. 106 on page 107. The temperature control is controlled automatically.

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Switching on/off _____ 116
Radio remote control _____ 116

Conditions for the functioning of auxiliary heating (Aux. heating and ventilation), hereinafter referred to only as auxiliary heating (Aux. heating).

- ✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.
- ✓ The fuel supply is adequate (the warning icon is not lit in the display of the instrument cluster).

Auxiliary ventilation

The auxiliary ventilation enables fresh air to flow into the vehicle interior by switching off the engine, whereby the interior temperature is effectively decreased (e.g. with the vehicle parked in the sun).

Auxiliary heating (parking heating)

The auxiliary heating (parking heating) can be used when stationary, when the engine is switched off to preheat the vehicle and while driving (e.g. during the heating phase of the engine).

The auxiliary heater (parking heater) functions in connection with the air-conditioning system or Climatronic.

The auxiliary heating (parking heating) also warms up the engine.

The auxiliary heating (parking heating) warms up the coolant by combusting fuel from the vehicle tank. The coolant heats air flowing into the passenger compartment (as long as the blower fan speed » Fig. 108 on page 108 or » Fig. 110 on page 112 is not set to zero).



WARNING

- The auxiliary heater (independent vehicle heater) must never be operated in closed rooms (e.g. garages) – risk of poisoning!
- The auxiliary heating (parking heating) must not be running during refuelling – risk of fire.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating is located underneath the vehicle. Therefore, if you wish to operate the auxiliary heating (parking heating), do not park the vehicle in such a way that the exhaust gases can come into contact with highly flammable materials (e.g. dry grass) or easily inflammable substances (e.g. spilt fuel) – risk of fire.



CAUTION

- The running auxiliary heating (parking heating) consumes fuel from the vehicle tank and automatically controls the filling level. If only a low quantity of fuel is present in the fuel tank, the auxiliary heater switches itself off.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating, which is located underneath the vehicle, must not be clogged up and the exhaust flow must not be blocked.
- If the auxiliary heating is running, the vehicle battery discharges. If the auxiliary heating and ventilation has been operated several times over a longer period, the vehicle must be driven a few kilometres in order to recharge the vehicle battery.



Note

- The auxiliary heating (aux. heating) switches on the blower » Fig. 108 on page 108 or » Fig. 110 on page 112 only if it has achieved a coolant temperature of approx. 50 °C.
- At low outside temperatures, this can result in a formation of water vapour in the area of the engine compartment. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of e.g. ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the auxiliary heating and cooling system operates properly.
- So that warm air can flow into the vehicle interior after switching on the auxiliary heating, you must maintain the comfort temperature normally selected by you, leave the fan switched on and leave the air outlet vents in an open position. It is recommended to put the air flow in the position or .

Switching on/off

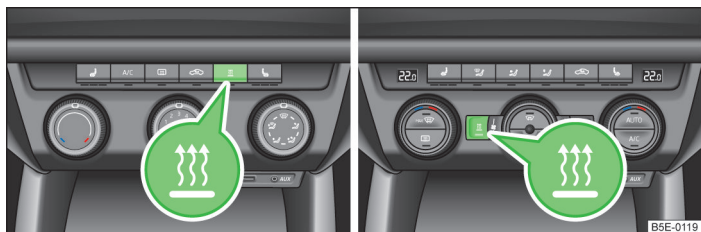


Fig. 111 Button for switching on/off the system directly on the operating part of the air conditioning/Climatronic

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 115.

The auxiliary heating (parking heating) can be switched on/off as follows.

Manually switching on

 using the button on the operating part of the manual air conditioning/Climatronic. The indicator light in the button illuminates » Fig. 111.

ON by using the radio remote control » page 116

Manually switching off

 using the button on the operating part of the manual air conditioning/Climatronic. The indicator light in the button goes out » Fig. 111.

OFF by using the radio remote control » page 116

After switching the system off, the auxiliary heating will continue running a little while longer in order to burn the remaining fuel in the auxiliary heater.

After switching off the auxiliary heating, the coolant pump runs for a short period.

Switching on automatically

The auxiliary heater is switched on according to the Infotainment settings » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.

When automatic switching on is activated, the indicator light in the symbol button  lights up for about 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off.

Switching off automatically

Turning off the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating) occurs in the following cases.

- » The set switch-off has been achieved » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.
- » The fuel level has reached the reserve area (the warning icon  illuminates).
- » The charge state of the vehicle battery has reduced too much » page 224.

Radio remote control

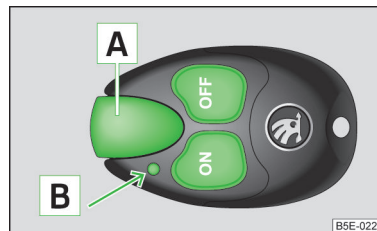


Fig. 112
Auxiliary heating (aux. heating):
Radio remote control

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 115.

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 112

A Aerial

B Warning light

ON Switch on the auxiliary heating

OFF Switch off the auxiliary heating

The transmitter and the battery are housed in the housing of the remote control. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle.

When the battery is fully charged, the range of the remote control is a few hundred metres. Obstacles between the radio remote control and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and a weaker battery can clearly reduce the range.

To switch the auxiliary heating (aux. heating) on or off, hold the remote control vertical, with the aerial **A** pointing upwards. The antenna must not be covered with the fingers or the palm of the hand during this process.

The auxiliary heating can only be switched on/off safely using the radio remote control, if the distance between the radio remote control and the vehicle is at least 2 m.

After pressing the button, the warning light in the remote control gives the user different kinds of feedback:

Display warning light B » Fig. 112	Meaning
Lights up green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched on.
Lights up red for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched off.
Slowly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The ignition signal was not received.
Quickly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating is blocked, e. g. because the tank is nearly empty or there is a fault in the auxiliary heating.
Flashes red for around 2 seconds.	The switch off signal was not received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then flashes green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was not received.
Flashes orange for around 5 seconds.	The battery is discharged, however the switching on or off signal was not received.

Replace the battery » page 247.

CAUTION

The radio remote control comprises electronic components and must therefore be protected against water, severe impacts and direct sunlight. ■

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Steering

Introduction

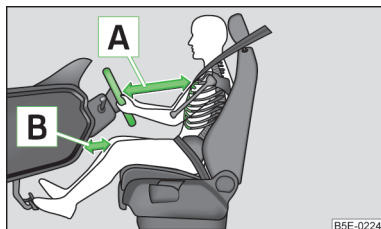


Fig. 113
Correct seated position for the driver

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adjusting the steering wheel position _____ 118

Power steering _____ 119

! WARNING

- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!

! WARNING (Continued)

- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance **A** » Fig. 113 between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm. Adjust the distance between the legs and the dash panel in the knee airbag area so that there is a distance of at least 10 cm **B**. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- If the steering wheel is adjusted further towards the head, the protection provided by the driver airbag in the event of an accident is reduced. Check that the steering wheel is aligned to the chest.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

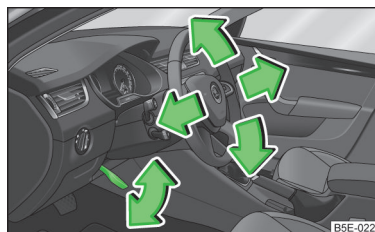


Fig. 114
Adjustable steering wheel: Lever below steering wheel

! First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 118.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

- First of all adjust the driver's seat » page 71.
- Swivel the lever underneath the steering wheel downwards » Fig. 114.
- Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position (with regard to the height and forward/back position).
- Push the lever upwards to the stop.

! WARNING

The lever for adjusting the steering wheel must be locked whilst driving so that the position of the steering wheel cannot accidentally change during the journey – risk of accident!

Power steering



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 118.

The power steering enables you to steer the vehicle with less physical force.

The power steering only works when the engine is running.

It is still possible to fully steer the vehicle if the power steering fails or if the engine is not running (e.g. vehicle being towed in). However, greater physical effort is required to turn the steering wheel.

Steering force assistance can be influenced by the selection of driving mode » page 161.

Starting and stopping the engine using the key



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic immobiliser	120
Ignition switch	120
Starting the engine	120
Stopping the engine	121

Starting and stopping the engine on vehicles with the KESSY system » page 121.

The engine can only be started with an appropriate original key.

The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.



WARNING

- When driving without the engine running, the ignition key must always be in the position  » Fig. 115 on page 120 (ignition switched on). This position is indicated by the illumination of certain indicator lights in the instrument cluster.
 - If the key is not in position , this could lead to unexpected the steering locking - risk of accident!
- Only pull the ignition key from the ignition lock when the vehicle has come to a complete stop (by applying the handbrake). Otherwise the steering wheel could block - risk of accident!
- When leaving the vehicle, the ignition must always be removed. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could, for example, start the engine - risk of accident or injury!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running.
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary - risk of accident!



WARNING

- Never leave the engine running in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust gases from the engine contain substances such as odourless and colourless carbon monoxide (a poisonous gas) - risk to life!
 - Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.



CAUTION

- The starter must only be operated when the engine is not running and the vehicle is at a standstill. The starter or engine may be damaged if the starter is activated when the engine is running  » Fig. 115 on page 120.
- Do not tow start the engine - there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 243, *Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle.*



CAUTION

- Avoid high engine revolutions, full throttle and high engine loads before the engine has reached its operating temperature - risk of damaging the engine!
- Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.



For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower.



Note

After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Electronic immobiliser



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 119.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock.

The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when the ignition key is withdrawn from the lock.

The engine will not start if a non-authorized ignition key is used.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

- M** Immobilizer active.
- S** IMMOBILIZER ACTIVE

Ignition switch

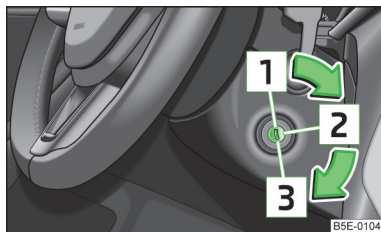


Fig. 115
Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 119.

Petrol engines » Fig. 115

- 1** Ignition switched off, engine off, the steering can be locked
- 2** Ignition switched on
- 3** Starting engine

Diesel engines » Fig. 115

- 1** Fuel supply interrupted, ignition switched off, engine switched off, the steering can be locked
- 2** Heating glow plugs on, ignition switched on
- 3** Starting engine

To **lock the steering**, with the ignition key withdrawn, turn the steering wheel until the steering locking pin engages audibly.

If the **steering is locked** and it is impossible or difficult to turn the key into position **2** » Fig. 115, move the steering wheel back and forth to unlock the steering.



Note

We recommend **locking the steering wheel** whenever leaving the vehicle. This acts as a deterrent against the attempted theft of your car.

Starting the engine



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 119.

Vehicles with a **diesel engine** are equipped with a glow plug system. The glow plug warning light  illuminates after the ignition has been switched on. Start the engine after the warning light  has gone out.

You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Procedure for starting the engine

- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- Move the gearshift lever into neutral or move the selector lever into position **P** or **N**.
- Switch on the ignition **2** » Fig. 115 on page 120.

- Depress and hold the clutch pedal (vehicles with a manual gearbox) or brake pedal (vehicles with an automatic gearbox) until the engine starts.
- Turn the key into position **3** as far as it will go - the engine's starting procedure will commence (do not touch the accelerator).
- Release the key, the engine will start automatically.

After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position **2**.

- Release the handbrake.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position **1**. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.

Vehicles with manual transmission

The engine will not start if the clutch pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Press the clutch to start.**

 **PRESS CLUTCH**

Vehicles with automatic transmission

The engine will not start if the brake pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Apply the brake to start.**

 **APPLY BRAKE**

CAUTION

- If the engine does not start up after a second attempt, one of the following fuses may be defective.
 - Petrol engine - fuse for the fuel pump.
 - Diesel engine - fuse for the glow plug control unit or fuel pump.
- Check the fuse and replace if necessary » [page 251](#), or seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Stopping the engine

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 119.**

Switch off the engine by turning the ignition key into position **1** » [Fig. 115](#) on page 120.

Note

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P**.

Starting and stopping the engine - KESSY

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Steering lock / unlock	122
Switching on the ignition	123
Starting the engine	123
Switching off the ignition	123
Switching off the engine	123
Emergency start-up of the engine	124
Emergency ignition shutoff system	124

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Exit System, hereinafter referred to only as system) allows the switching on or switching off of the ignition and starting or stopping of the engine without the active use of the key.

A key must be in the vehicle to unlock the steering, switch on the ignition and start the vehicle. When travelling the key must be in the vehicle.

The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could, for example, start the engine – risk of accident or injury!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running.
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!

! WARNING

- Never leave the engine running in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust gases from the engine contain substances such as odourless and colourless carbon monoxide (a poisonous gas) – risk to life!
 - Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.

! CAUTION

- The system can recognize the valid key, even if it has been forgotten, for example, in the front of the vehicle roof **D** » Fig. 14 on page 38 - There is danger of loss or damage to the key! It is therefore not always necessary to know where the key is.
- The starter must only be operated when the engine is not running and the vehicle is at a standstill. The starter or engine may be damaged if the starter is activated when the engine is running.
- Do not tow start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 243, *Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle.*

! CAUTION

- Avoid high engine revolutions, full throttle and high engine loads before the engine has reached its operating temperature – risk of damaging the engine!
- Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.



For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower.

i Note

- The vehicle can not be locked if the ignition has not been turned off.
- The system is protected against inadvertently switching off the engine while driving, this means that the engine can only be switched off in an emergency » page 124.

- After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.
- Under certain circumstances (e.g. after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door), the steering is enabled only when the ignition is switched on or the engine is started.

Steering lock / unlock



Fig. 116
Starter button



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 121.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters attempted theft of your vehicle.

Locking

- Stop the vehicle.
- Switch off the engine or the ignition by pressing the starter button » Fig. 116.
- Open the driver door.

The steering is locked automatically.

If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked after the vehicle is locked.

Unlocking

- Open the driver's door and get into the vehicle.
- Close the driver's door.

The steering is unlocked within 2 seconds.

If the system does not unlock the steering at the first time (for example when the front wheels are in contact with an obstacle), then two more unlocking attempts are performed automatically.

If the steering is still not unlocked, then the following message is displayed on the display of the instrument cluster.

 **Move the steering wheel!**

 **MOVE STEERING WHEEL**

Slightly move the steering wheel and the system will make up to 3 more attempts to unlock after 2 seconds. At the same time, the indicator light  flashes.

If the steering is still not unlocked, to try to eliminate the possible cause and then repeat the unlocking attempt.

Switching on the ignition



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 121.

➤ Press the starter button » [Fig. 116](#) on page 122 briefly.

The ignition is switched on.



Note

The ignition is switched on when indicated by the lighting up of certain indicator lamps in the instrument cluster.

Starting the engine



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 121.

Vehicles with a **diesel engine** are equipped with a glow plug system. The glow plug warning light  illuminates after the ignition has been switched on. Start the engine after the warning light  has gone out.

You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Procedure for starting the engine

- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- Move the gearshift lever into neutral or move the selector lever into position P or N.
- Depress and hold the clutch pedal (vehicles with a manual gearbox) or brake pedal (vehicles with an automatic gearbox) until the engine starts.

- Press the starter button » [Fig. 116](#) on page 122 briefly – the engine starts automatically.
- Release the handbrake.



CAUTION

- If the engine does not start up after a second attempt, one of the following fuses may be defective.
 - Petrol engine - fuse for the fuel pump.
 - Diesel engine - fuse for the glow plug control unit or fuel pump.
- Check the fuse and replace if necessary » [page 251](#), or seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Switching off the ignition



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 121.

➤ Press the starter button » [Fig. 116](#) on page 122 briefly.

The ignition is switched off.

The ignition can be switched off up to a speed of 2 km/h.

On vehicles fitted with a **manual gearbox**, the clutch pedal must not be depressed after switching off the ignition, otherwise the system would try to start.

For **automatic transmission** vehicles, the brake pedal must not be depressed, otherwise the system will try to start.

If the driver's door is opened while the ignition is on, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

 **Ignition on!**

 **IGNITION STILL ON**

When leaving the vehicle always switch off the ignition.

Switching off the engine



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 121.

- Stop the vehicle.
- Press the starter button » [Fig. 116](#) on page 122.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

Emergency start-up of the engine

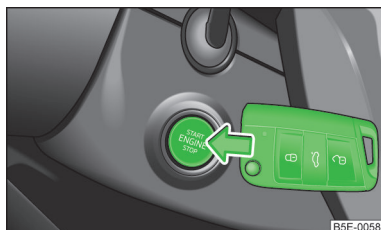


Fig. 117
Emergency start-up of engine

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 121.

If the authorisation check for the key fails, the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Key not found.

NO KEY

The emergency start-up must be completed.

➤ Press the starter button directly with the key » Fig. 117.

Or

➤ Press the starter button and then hold the key to the starter button.

Note

During an emergency start-up of the engine, the key bit must face the starter button » Fig. 117.

Emergency ignition shutoff system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 121.

The ignition can be turned off in an emergency even when travelling at a speed of more than 2 km / hr.

- ➤ Press the starter button » Fig. 116 on page 122 for longer than 1 second or twice within 1 second.

After emergency stop of the ignition, the steering is unlocked.

Brakes

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information on braking _____ 125

Handbrake _____ 125

WARNING

- Greater physical effort for braking is required when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
- During the braking procedure on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, press the clutch pedal. If you fail to do so, the functionality of the brake booster can be impaired – risk of accident!
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle might then move off – risk of accident!

WARNING

- In the event of damage occurring to the standard fitted front spoiler or the retrofitting of another front spoiler, wheel hubs etc. » page 200, *Service work, adjustments and technical alterations*, It must be ensured that the air supply to the front brakes is not impaired. The front brakes may overheat which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » page 131.
- Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

Information on braking



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 124.

If the brakes are applied in full and the control unit for the braking system considers the situation to be dangerous for the following traffic, the brake light flashes automatically.

After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.

Before driving a long distance at a steep incline, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

Wear-and-tear

The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style.

The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted.

If operated under **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must be checked by a specialist garage between service appointments as well.

Wet roads or road salt

The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times.

Corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times.

Faults in the brake surface

If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, the brake system may be faulty.

Visit a specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage.

Low brake fluid level

An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically » [page 16](#),  *Brake system*.

Brake booster

The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

Handbrake



Fig. 118
Handbrake



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 124.

Apply

➤ Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Release

- Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **and at the same time** push in the lock button » [Fig. 118](#).
- Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light  lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M Release the parking brake!

S PARKING BRAKE ON PLEASE RELEASE

The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of more than around 5 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

! WARNING

Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Manual shifting of gears and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing _____ 126
Pedals _____ 126

Manual gear changing

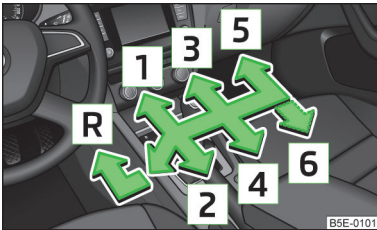


Fig. 119
Gearshift pattern of 5 gear or
6 gear manual gearbox



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 126.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 27.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary. Depress the clutch pedal and hold it fully depressed. Wait a moment before reverse gear is engaged to avoid any shift noises.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

! WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.

Pedals



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 126.

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

In the driver's footwell, only a footmat, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points, may be used.

Only use factory-supplied foot mats or formats from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories, which are fitted to two attachment points.

! WARNING

No objects may be placed in the driver's footwell – risk due to obstruction or limitation of pedal operation.

Automatic transmission



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Modes and use of selector lever _____ 127
Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic) _____ 128
Starting-off and driving _____ 129

! WARNING

- Do not depress the accelerator if changing the forward driving mode – risk of accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – risk of an accident!
- When the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running, you need to hold the vehicle with the brake pedal in mode **D**, **S** or **R**. Even when the engine is idling, the power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle creeps.
- When leaving the vehicle the selector lever must always be set to **P**. Otherwise the vehicle could then start to move and potentially cause an accident.

! CAUTION

- If you moved the selector lever to mode **N** while driving, you need to release the accelerator pedal and wait until the engine has reached its idling speed, before you can move the selector lever to a forward driving mode again.
- At temperatures below -10 °C the engine can only be started in the selector lever position **P**.
- When trying to stop on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

i Note

After the ignition is switched off, the ignition key can only be withdrawn if the selector lever is in the position **P**.

Modes and use of selector lever

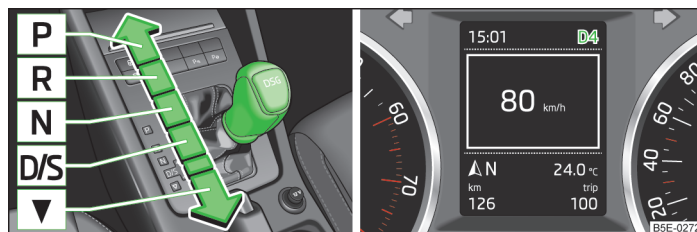


Fig. 120 Selector lever/display



Fig. 121
Shiftlock button



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 126.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 120.

The following modes can be selected with the selector lever » Fig. 120.

P - Parking mode

The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this mode.

The parking mode must only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

R - Reverse gear

Reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idling speed.

Before moving into mode **R** from mode **P** or **N**, depress the brake pedal while simultaneously pressing the lock button » Fig. 121.

N - Neutral

The power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted in this mode.

D/S - mode for driving forward (Normal program) / mode for driving forward (Sport program)

Switch between the modes by moving the selector lever to the sprung position ▽ » Fig. 120 if necessary, by selecting the driving mode » page 161.

In mode **D** or **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically depending on the engine load, the operation of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle speed, and the selected driving mode » page 161.

If you select the driving mode Sport or Normal, and move the selector lever to the position **D/S**, the transmission is set automatically to mode **S** or **D**.

In mode **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down at higher engine speeds than in mode **D**.

E - Economical driving mode

If you select the driving mode Eco » page 161, and move the selector lever to the position **D/S**, the transmission is set automatically to mode **E**. This mode cannot be selected with the selector lever.

In mode **E**, the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down at lower engine speeds than in mode **D**.

Releasing selector lever from mode **P** or **N** (selector lever lock)

The selector lever is locked in mode **P** and **N** to prevent that the forward driving is selected accidentally, thereby setting the vehicle in motion. The indicator light  » page 21 illuminates in the instrument cluster.

The selector lever is released by depressing the brake pedal while simultaneously pressing the lock button » Fig. 121.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D/S**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will click into place if the lever is in the position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

Defective selector lever lock

If the selector lever lock is defective or its power supply is interrupted (e.g. discharged vehicle battery, blown fuse), the selector lever can no longer be moved out of position **P** in the normal manner, and the vehicle can no longer be moved. The selector lever must be unlocked specially » page 249.

Note

If you want to move the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D/S** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents that you accidentally select mode **R** or **N**.

Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)

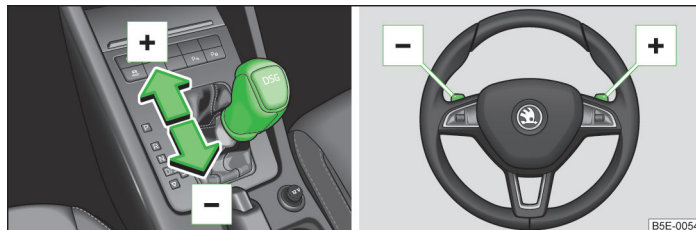


Fig. 122 Selector lever/multi-function steering wheel

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 126.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears with the selector lever or multifunction steering wheel. This mode can be selected both while stopping and while driving.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the display » Fig. 120 on page 127.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 27.

Switching to manual shifting

➤ Push the gear selector from position **D/S** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle.

Shifting up gears

➤ Push the selector lever forwards  » Fig. 122.

- Pull the right-hand paddle  » Fig. 122 briefly towards the steering wheel.

Shifting down gears

- Push the selector lever backwards  » Fig. 122.
- Pull the left-hand paddle  » Fig. 122 briefly towards the steering wheel.

Temporarily switching to manual shifting in position D/S

- Pull one of the  paddles » Fig. 122 briefly towards the steering wheel.

If you do not pull one of the rocker switches  for more than 1 Minute, manual shifting of gears is deactivated. You can also deactivate the temporary switch to manual shifting by pulling the right rocker switch  towards the steering wheel for more than 1 second.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.

If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

Note

It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear of the brakes » page 125.

Starting-off and driving



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 126.

Starting off

- Start the engine.
- Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Press and hold the lock button » Fig. 121 on page 127.
- Move the selector lever into the desired position » page 127 and then release the lock button.
- Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stop

- Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
- Keep holding the brake pedal until driving is resumed.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads.

Parking

- Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- Press and hold the lock button » Fig. 121 on page 127.
- Move the selector lever into the position **P** and then release the lock button.

Driving in neutral position in mode E (freewheel)

- Move the selector lever into the position **D/S**.
- Select the Eco driving mode » page 161, *Driving mode*.
- Take the foot off the accelerator pedal.

The vehicle moves without the braking effect of the engine.

The gear is selected again automatically, when you briefly depress the brake pedal or pull the left rocker switch  towards the steering wheel » page 128, *Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)*.

Launch control¹⁾

The launch control function allows the vehicle in mode **S** or Tiptronic to reach its maximum acceleration when starting off.

- Disable the TCS » page 137, *Brake assist systems*.
- START STOP deactivate » page 160, *Manually activating/deactivating the system*.
- Fully depress and hold the brake pedal with your left foot.
- Fully depress the accelerator pedal with your right foot.
- Release the brake pedal.

The vehicle starts off with maximum acceleration.

Reactivate the TCS and START-STOP when the desired speed has been reached.

Kickdown

The kickdown function allows you to achieve the maximum acceleration of your vehicle while driving.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the kickdown function is activated in any forward driving mode.

The gearbox shifts down one or more gears depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed, and the vehicle accelerates.

¹⁾ This function is only valid for some engines.

The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

WARNING

Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

Running in

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

New engine	130
New tyres	130
New brake pads	131

New engine



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 130.

The engine has to be run in during the first 1500 kilometres.

Up to 1000 kilometres

- Do not drive faster than 3/4 of the maximum speed of the gear in use, i.e. 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed.
- No full throttle.
- Avoid high engine speeds.
- Do not tow a trailer.

From 1000 up to 1500 kilometres

Gradually increase the power output of the engine up to the full speed of the gear engaged, i.e. up to the maximum permissible engine speed.

The red scale of the rev counter indicates the range in which the system begins to limit the engine speed.

During the first operating hours the engine has higher internal friction than later until all of the moving parts have harmonized. The driving style which you adopt during the first approx. 1500 kilometres plays a decisive part in the success of running in your car.

Never drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds, even after the running-in period is complete.

On vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox, at the very latest shift up into the next gear when the red area is reached. Observe the recommended gear » [page 27](#).

Very high engine speeds when accelerating (accelerator) are automatically restricted » .

With vehicles with a manual gearbox, do not drive at unnecessarily **low** engine speeds. Shift down a gear when the engine is no longer running smoothly. Observe the recommended gear » [page 27](#).



CAUTION

- The engine is not protected from excessive engine revs caused by shifting down at the wrong time. This can result in the sudden increase in revs beyond the permissible maximum rpm and thus cause engine damage.
- Never rev up a cold engine when the vehicle is stationary or when driving in individual gears.



For the sake of the environment

Do not drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds. Shifting up sooner helps save on fuel, reduces engine noises and protects the environment.

New tyres



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 130.

New tyres have to be "run in" since they do not offer optimal grip at first. Drive especially carefully for the first 500 km or so.

New brake pads



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 130.

New brake pads initially do not provide optimal braking performance. They first need to be "run in". Drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

Economical driving and environmental sustainability



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Looking ahead	131
Economical gear changing	132
Avoiding full throttle	132
Reducing idling	132
Avoiding short distances	133
Convenience consumers	133
Checking tyre inflation pressure	133
Avoiding unnecessary ballast	134
Regular maintenance	134
Saving electrical energy	134
Environmental compatibility	134

The technical requirements for low fuel usage and economic efficiency of the vehicle have already been built into the vehicle at the works. ŠKODA places a particular emphasis on minimising negative effects on the environment.

It is necessary to take note of the guidelines given in this chapter in order to make best use of these characteristics and to maintain their effectiveness.

Fuel consumption, environmental pollution and the wear to the engine, brakes and tyres depend essentially on the following three factors:

- your personal style of driving.
- the conditions under which your vehicle is used,
- technical requirements.

The fuel economy can be improved by 10 -15 % by always looking ahead and driving in an economical way.

Fuel consumption is also influenced by external factors which are beyond the driver's control. Consumption increases during the winter or under difficult conditions, on poor roads, etc.

Fuel consumption can vary considerably from the manufacturer's data, as a result of outside temperatures, the weather and driving style.

The optimal engine speed should be obtained when accelerating, in order to avoid a high fuel consumption and resonance of the vehicle.



CAUTION

All the speed and engine revolution figures apply only when the engine is at its normal operating temperature.

Looking ahead



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 131.

A vehicle's highest fuel consumption occurs when accelerating, therefore unnecessary accelerating and braking should be avoided. If looking ahead when driving, less braking and consequently less accelerating are required.

If possible, let your vehicle coast to a stop, or use the engine brake, if you can see that the next set of traffic lights is on red, for example.

Economical gear changing

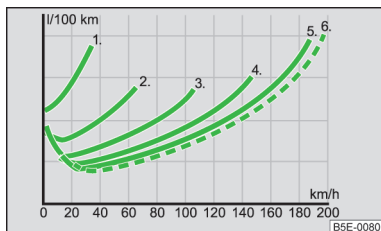


Fig. 123
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km depending on the selected gear



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 131.

Shifting up early saves on fuel.

Manual gearbox

- Drive no more than about one length of your vehicle in first gear.
- Shift up into the next gear at approx. 2 000 revs/min.

An effective way of achieving good fuel economy is to shift up **early**. Observe the recommended gear » [page 27](#).

Sensible gear selection can have an effect on fuel consumption » [Fig. 123](#).

Automatic gearbox

- **Slowly** apply the accelerator pedal. However, do not depress it to the kick-down position » [page 129](#).
- If the accelerator pedal is only depressed slowly, an economic driving programme is automatically selected.

Avoiding full throttle

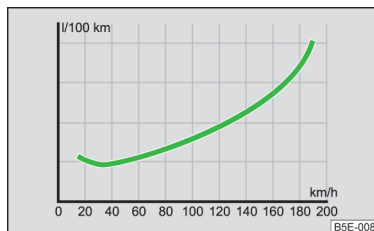


Fig. 124
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km. and speed in km/h



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 131.

The slower you drive, the more the fuel savings.

Sensitive use of the accelerator will not only significantly reduce fuel consumption but also positively influence environmental pollution and wear of your vehicle.

The maximum speed of your vehicle should, as far possible, never be used. Fuel consumption, pollutant emissions and vehicle noises increase disproportionately at high speeds.

The » [Fig. 124](#) shows the ratio of fuel consumption to speed. Fuel consumption will be halved if only three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle is used.

Reducing idling



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 131.

Idling also costs fuel.

In vehicles not equipped with the START-STOP system, turn off the engine when in a traffic jam, at a level crossing or traffic lights with longer wait times.

Even after just 30-40 seconds you will have saved more fuel than that is needed when you start the engine up again.

If an engine is only idling it takes much longer for it to reach its normal operating temperature. Wear-and-tear and pollutant emissions, though, are particularly high in the warming-up phase. Therefore, start driving as soon as the engine has started, though high engine speeds should be avoided.

Avoiding short distances

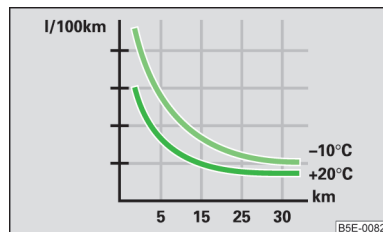


Fig. 125
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in l/100 km at different temperatures



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 131.

Short distances result in an above-average high fuel consumption. We therefore recommend avoiding distances of less than 4 km if the engine is cold.

A cold engine consumes the most fuel immediately after the start. Fuel consumption drops to 10 litres/100 km after just 1 kilometre. The consumption stabilises once the engine and catalytic converter have reached their operating temperature.

An important factor in this connection is also the **ambient temperature**. The image » Fig. 125 shows the different levels of fuel consumption after driving a certain distance at a temperature of +20 °C and at a temperature of -10 °C.

The vehicle has a higher fuel consumption in winter than in summer.

Convenience consumers



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 131.

The convenience consumers have a share in fuel consumption.

We recommend you keep these consumers on only for as long as necessary.

The convenience consumers include:

- The air conditioning system;
- Rear window heater;
- Windscreen heater;
- Heating of the external mirror;
- Rear fog light;
- Fog lights;
- Heated front seats;
- Auxiliary heating (parking heating).

Information about convenience consumers and the amount of fuel consumed » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Up to three convenience consumers are displayed in the Infotainment display-the top 3 in terms of energy consumption¹⁾.

Checking tyre inflation pressure



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 131.

Tyres which are correctly inflated save fuel.

Always ensure the tyre inflation pressure is correct. If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyres must overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will not only increase fuel consumption but also tyre wear and the driving behaviour will worsen.

Always check the tyre inflation pressure when the tyres are **cold**.

¹⁾ The exterior mirror heater will only be shown in the infotainment display when outside temperatures are below about 20 °C.

Avoiding unnecessary ballast



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 131.

Transporting ballast costs fuel.

Each **kilogramme of weight** increases the fuel consumption. Therefore, we recommend to carry no unnecessary weight.

It is particularly in town traffic, when one is accelerating quite often, that the vehicle weight will have a significant effect upon the fuel consumption. A rule of thumb here is that an increase in weight of 100 kilograms will cause an increase in fuel consumption of about 1 litre/100 kilometres.

At a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, a vehicle fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

Regular maintenance



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 131.

A poorly tuned engine uses an unnecessarily high amount of fuel.

By having your vehicle regularly maintained by a specialist garage, you create the conditions needed for economical driving. The maintenance state of your vehicle has a positive effect on traffic safety and value retention.

A poorly tuned engine can result in a fuel consumption which is 10 % higher than normal!

Check the **oil** at regular intervals, e.g. when filling up. **Oil consumption** is dependent to a considerable extent on the load and speed of the engine. Oil consumption could be as high as 0.5 litres/1000 km depending on your style of driving.

It is quite normal that a new engine has a higher oil consumption at first, and reaches its lowest level only after a certain running in time. The oil consumption of a new vehicle can therefore only be correctly assessed after driving about 5000 km.



For the sake of the environment

- Additional improvements to the fuel economy can be made by using synthetic high-lubricity oils.
- Regularly check the ground under the vehicle. Have your vehicle inspected by a specialist garage if you find any stains caused by oil or other fluids on the ground.



Note

We recommend that your vehicle be serviced on a regular basis by a ŠKODA service partner.

Saving electrical energy



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 131.

When the engine is running, the alternator generates and supplies electrical power. If more electrical components of the electrical system are switched on, more fuel is needed to operate the alternator. We therefore recommend switching off electrical components if these are no longer required.

Environmental compatibility



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 131.

Environmental protection has played a major role in the design, selection of materials, and manufacture of your new ŠKODA. Particular emphasis has been placed on the following points.

Design measures

- Joints designed to be easily detached.
- Simplified disassembly due to the modular structure system.
- Improved purity of different classes of materials.
- Identification of all plastic parts in accordance with VDA Recommendation 260.
- Reduced fuel consumption and exhaust emission CO₂.
- Minimum fuel leakage during accidents.
- Reduced noise.

Choice of materials

- Extensive use of recyclable material.
- Air conditioning filled with CFC-free refrigerant.
- No cadmium.
- No asbestos.
- Reduction in the "vaporisation" of plastics.

Manufacture

- Solvent-free cavity protection.
- Solvent-free protection of the vehicle for transportation from the production plant to the customer.
- The use of solvent-free adhesives.
- No CFCs used in the production process.
- Without use of mercury.
- Use of water-soluble paints.

Trade-in and recycling of old cars

ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources. All new ŠKODA vehicles can be utilized up to 95 % and always ¹⁾ be returned.

In a lot of countries sufficient trade-in networks have been created, where you can trade-in your vehicle. After you trade-in your vehicle, you will receive a confirmation stating the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

You can find more detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of old cars from a specialist garage.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

General information	135
Driving through water on streets	135

General information



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 135.

Pay attention to low-slung parts of the vehicle, such as the spoiler and exhaust, particularly in the following situations.

- When driving on poorly maintained roads and lanes.
- When driving over kerb stones.
- When driving on steep ramps, etc.

Particular attention is necessary for vehicle with a sport suspension and when then vehicle is fully laden.

Driving through water on streets

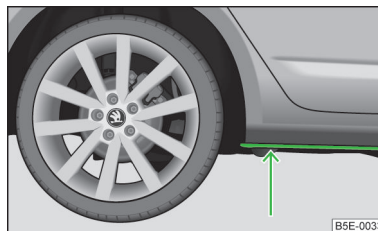


Fig. 126
Driving through water



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 135.

The following must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle when driving through bodies of water (e.g. flooded roads).

- Determine the depth of the water when driving through bodies of water. The water level must not reach above the bar on the lower beam » Fig. 126.
- Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed.

At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle which can cause water to penetrate into the air induction system of the engine or into other parts of the vehicle.

¹⁾ Subject to fulfilment of the national legal requirements.

- Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.
- Deactivate the START-STOP system before driving through water » [page 158](#).

! WARNING

- Driving through water, mud, sludge etc. can reduce the braking power and extend the braking distance – risk of accident!
- Avoid abrupt and sudden braking immediately after water crossings.
- After driving through bodies of water, the brakes must be cleaned and dried as soon as possible by intermittent braking. Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.

! CAUTION

- When driving through bodies of water, some parts of the vehicle such as the engine, gearbox, chassis or electrics can be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water making it difficult or impossible to drive through the body of water.
- Do not drive through salt water. The salt can lead to corrosion. Any vehicle parts that have come into contact with salt water must be rinsed immediately with fresh water.

i Note

After driving through water, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage.

Driving abroad

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unleaded petrol	_____ 136
Headlights	_____ 136

In certain countries it is also possible that the ŠKODA Partner network is limited or has not been established yet. This is the reason why procuring certain spare parts may be somewhat complicated and specialist garages may only be able to make limited repairs.

Unleaded petrol



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 136.

A vehicle fitted with a petrol engine must always be refuelled with unleaded petrol » [page 213](#). Information regarding the locations of filling stations that offer unleaded petrol is, for example, provided by the automobile associations.

Headlights



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 136.

The low beam of your headlights is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which the vehicle is being driven to a greater extent.

When driving in countries in which the traffic drives on the other side of the road than in your home country, the asymmetrical low beam may dazzle oncoming drivers. In order to avoid this, the headlights must be adjusted at a specialist garage.

You can adjust the Xenon headlights yourself by setting the "tourist light" mode in Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

i Note

You can find out more information on adjusting the headlights at a specialist garage.

Assist systems

Brake assist systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	137
Antilock Braking System (ABS)	138
Traction Control System (TCS)	138
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDS)	139
Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR)	139
Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)	139
Hill Hold Control (HHC)	139
Multicollision brake	140

WARNING

- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. The brake assist systems would then fail to function – risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. The increased safety offered by the brake assist systems must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of accident!
- In the event of an ABS fault, visit a specialist garage immediately. Adjust your style of driving according to the damage to the ABS as you will not know how great the damage is and the limitation it is placing on the braking efficiency.

CAUTION

- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres approved by the manufacturer to ensure the brake assist systems operate correctly.
- Changes to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, brakes, chassis) can influence the functionality of the brake assist systems » [page 200](#).
- If a fault occurs in the ABS system, the ESC, ASR and EDL also do not work. An ABS fault is indicated with the warning light  » [page 18](#).

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)



Fig. 127
ESC button



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on [page 137](#).

The ESC system helps to maintain control of the vehicle in situations where it is being operated at its dynamic limits, such as a sudden change to the direction of travel. The risk of skidding is reduced and your car thus offers greater driving stability depending on the conditions of the road surface.

The ESC system is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The direction which the driver wishes to take is determined based on the steering angle and the speed of the vehicle and is constantly compared with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. If differences exist, such as the car beginning to skid, the ESC system will automatically brake the appropriate wheel.

During an intervention of the system, the warning light  flashes in the instrument cluster.

The following systems are integrated into the **Electronic Stability Control (ESC)**.

- Antilock Brake System (ABS) » [page 138](#).
- Traction control (TCS) » [page 138](#).
- Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDS) » [page 139](#).
- Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR) » [page 139](#).
- Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA) » [page 139](#).
- Hill Hold Control (HHC) » [page 139](#).
- Multicollision brake » [page 140](#).
- Trailer stabilisation (TSA) » [page 173](#), *Driving with a trailer*.

The ESC system cannot be deactivated. Only some systems with built-in ESC can be deactivated or activated.

Activate/deactivate TCS

Within the ESC system, the TCS can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (key CAR)* or with the symbol key  » Fig. 127 .

➤ Briefly press the symbol button .

The warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster and the following message is shown on the display.

 **Traction control (ASR) deactivated.**

 **ASR OFF**

➤ Press the symbol button  again.

The warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster and the following message is shown on the display.

 **Traction control (ASR) activated.**

 **ASR ON**

Enable/disable ESC Sport

Within the ESC system, the ESC SPORT can be deactivated or activated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (key CAR)* or with the symbol key  » Fig. 127 .

ESC Sport is a setting intended for a sporty way of driving. By activating ESC Sport, the **TCS is disabled** and the activation of the ESC procedure is delayed so that the sporty drive will not be compromised if applicable.

➤ Press and hold the symbol button .

The warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster and the following message is shown on the display.

 **ESC sport: directional stabil. restricted.**

 **ESC SPORT**

➤ Press the symbol button  again.

The warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster and the following message is shown on the display.

 **Stabilisation control (ESC) activated.**

 **ESC ON**

CAUTION

By activating ESC Sport, **TCS** is automatically deactivated. As a result of this, some of the other vehicle system functions may be limited.

Antilock Braking System (ABS)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 137.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Traction Control System (TCS)



Fig. 128
TCS button



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 137.

If the wheels are slipping, the TCS system adapts the engine speed to the conditions of the road surface. The TCS makes it much easier to start off, accelerate and climb steep hills even if the conditions of the road surface are unfavourable.

The TCS function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

If your vehicle is fitted with the ESC system, the ASR is integrated into the ESC system » page 137.

During an intervention of the system, the TCS warning light  flashes in the instrument cluster.

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.

- When driving with snow chains.
- When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
- When it is necessary to "rock" a car free when it has become stuck.

The TCS can be deactivated in the Infotainment or with the symbol button  » Fig. 128 » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

The warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster when the TCR is deactivated.

Ensure the TCS is activated again afterwards.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDS)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 137.

EDL

If one of the wheels starts to spin, the EDL system brakes the spinning wheel and transfers the driving force to the other wheels. This ensures the stability of the vehicle and a quick journey.

The EDL switches itself off automatically, in order to avoid excessive heat generation in the disc brake of the wheel being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL. The EDL switches on again automatically as soon as the brake has cooled down.

XDS

XDL is an extension to the electronic differential lock. XDL does not respond to traction, but to the load relief of the inner front wheel of the driving axle during fast cornering.

The automatic brake intervention on the brake of the wheel with reduced load prevents the wheel from spinning. Thus, the traction is improved and the vehicle can continue to follow the desired track.

Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 137.

The DSR indicates to the driver in critical situations a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle. The DSR is activated, for example, on the right and left vehicle side when braking sharply on different road surfaces.

Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 137.

HBA increases the braking effect and helps to shorten the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by the very quick operation of the brake pedal. To achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a complete standstill.

The HBA is automatically switched off when the brake pedal is released.

The ABS is activated faster and more effectively with the intervention of the HBA.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 137.

HHC allows you, when driving on slopes, to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without having to use the handbrake.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

The brake pressure drops gradually the more you operate the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle does not start off within 2 seconds, it starts to roll back.

The HHC is active from a 5% slope if the driver's door is closed. HHC is always active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off. When driving downhill, it is inactive.

Multicollision brake



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 137.

The multifunction brake deploys automatic braking after a collision in order to reduce the risk of further collisions. Automatic braking can only be deployed at speeds of over 10 km/h in the event of a **frontal** or **side** impact.

The vehicle is slowed down automatically by the ESC system as long as the brakes, the ESC and the relevant electrical system remain operational after the impact.

Automatic braking is not applied if the driver presses the accelerator during the accident.

Parking aid



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function	141
Automatic system activation when moving forward	142
Road display	142



WARNING

- The parking aid is not a substitute for the driver paying proper attention and it is always the driver's responsibility to take care when reversing the vehicle or carrying out similar manoeuvres. Pay particular attention to small children and animals as they may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- You should satisfy yourself before reversing that there is no small obstacle, such as a rock, thin post, trailer drawbar etc., in front or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. Thus, these objects or people who wear such clothing are not recognised by the System sensors.
- External sound sources can have a detrimental effect on the system. Under adverse conditions, this can cause objects or people to not be recognized by the system.



CAUTION

- If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. The fault is also indicated by the symbol  flashing » Fig. 129 on page 141 in the button.  or  appears in the Infotainment display. Seek help from a specialist garage.
- The sensors must be kept clean (free of ice, etc.) to enable the system to operate properly.
- The system function may be limited under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures etc.).
- Additional mounted modules, such as a bicycle carrier, can impair the function of the parking aid.



Note

- The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.
- If not all fields around the vehicle are shown after the system is activated, the vehicle will need to be moved a few metres forwards or in reverse.
- If the system is activated and the selector lever of the automatic gearbox is in position **P** (the vehicle cannot move), the warning tone is interrupted and no obstacles are displayed.

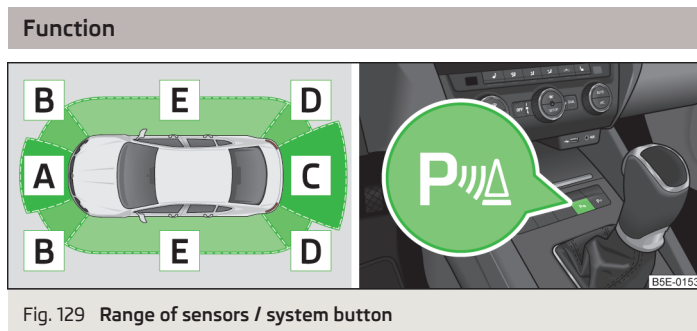


Image Description - approximate range of sensors (in cm)

Range » Fig. 129	12 sensors	8 sensors	4 sensors
A	120	120	-
B	90	60	-
C	160	160	160
D	90	60	60
E	90	-	-

The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm - danger area.

From this moment on do not continue driving!

The length of the vehicle can be increased with an installed detachable towing device. The danger area thus begins at a distance of around 35 cm on vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted towing device.

For information on setting the acoustic signals and a description of the Infotainment display see » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

Activation/deactivation

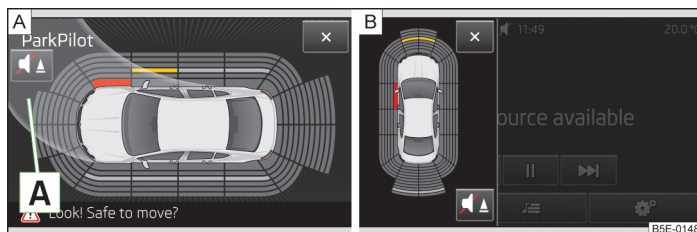
The system is automatically activated by selecting **reverse gear** or pressing the symbol button **P** » Fig. 129. The symbol **P** lights up in the button; activation is confirmed by a brief acoustic signal.

The system is deactivated by moving out of reverse gear, either by pressing the symbol button **P** or automatically at a speed exceeding 10 km/h (the symbol **P** in the button goes out).

On vehicles which **only have rear** sensors, the system can only be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

Towing a trailer

On vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted towing device, only the areas **A** and **B** » Fig. 129 of the system are active when operating a trailer, there is no road display.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 140.

The parking aid (hereafter only referred to as system) works only when the ignition is switched on.

The system supports the driver using acoustic signals/Infotainment display when parking and manoeuvring.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasound sensors are integrated in the front/rear bumper.

Automatic system activation when moving forward



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 140.

Automatic activation takes place at a speed below around 10 km/h under the following conditions.

- The distance to the obstacle at the front is less than around 90 cm.
- The distance to the obstacle at the front is less than around 30 cm.
- The distance to the obstacle to the side of the vehicle is less than around 30 cm.

After activation, the following is shown in the left pane of the Infotainment display » Fig. 130 on page 141 - **B**.

Acoustic signals are sounded as of a distance from the obstacle of around 50 cm.

Automatic display can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (*CAR* button).

Road display



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 140.

The display of the upcoming road changes depending on the steering angle **A** » Fig. 130 on page 141 - **A**.

Obstacles that are **located** on the road are represented by the following colours.

- Red – the distance to the obstacle is less than about 30 cm.
- Yellow – the distance to the obstacle is more than about 30 cm.

Obstacles that are **not located** on the road are represented by the following colours.

- Red – the distance to the obstacle is less than about 30 cm.
- White – the distance to the obstacle is more than about 30 cm.

The road **ahead** is displayed when a forward gear or Neutral is engaged or the selector lever is in position **N**.

The road **behind the vehicle** is displayed when reverse gear is engaged or the selector lever is in position **R**.

Park assist



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Finding a parking space	143
Parking	144
Manoeuvring out of a parallel parking space	145
Automatic brake assist	145
Information messages	145

The parking aid is part of the park assist system, therefore the information and safety guidelines » page 140, *Parking aid* must also be read and observed.

Park Assist (in the following referred to as the system) helps drivers park in suitable parallel and perpendicular parking places and also to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

The system only operates if the ignition is switched on.

The displays, messages and system instructions are displayed in the MAXI DOT display (in the display only below).

During the parking procedure the system only takes over the steering movements, the pedals continue to be operated by the driver.

When the system is activated, the warning light lights up **P** » Fig. 131 on page 143 - **A**.

The traction control system (TCS) must always be switched on when parking.

Basis of the system function

- The measurement and evaluation of the size of parking spaces when driving.
- The determination of the correct position of the vehicle for parking.
- The calculation of the line on which the vehicle drives backwards into the parking space or forwards from the parking space.
- the automatic turning of the front wheels when parking in, or manoeuvring out of the parking space.

! WARNING

- The system does not exempt the driver from his/her responsibility for parking in and manoeuvring out of the parking space.
- External sound sources can have a detrimental effect on parking in and manoeuvring out of the parking space. Under adverse conditions, this can cause objects or people to not be recognized by the system.
- When parking in, and manoeuvring out of parking spaces, the system automatically executes quick steering movements. While it is doing so, do not place your hands between the steering wheel – risk of injury!
- When parking or leaving a parking space on loose or slippery surfaces (gravel, snow, ice, etc.) you may stray from the calculated road because of the surface conditions. Therefore we suggest that you do not use the system in such situations.

! CAUTION

- If other vehicles are parked behind the kerb or on it, the system can also guide your vehicle beyond the kerb or onto it. Ensure that the wheels or the wheel rims of your vehicle are not damaged and if necessary intervene in time.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces or structures of certain objects such as wire mesh fences or powder snow cannot be recognised by the system.
- The system function may be limited under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures etc.).
- The evaluation of the parking space and the parking procedure depends on the circumference of the wheels on the vehicle. The system only works correctly if the vehicle is fitted with the wheel size approved by the manufacturer.
- If wheels other than those approved by the manufacturer are mounted, the resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space can differ slightly. This can be avoided by readjusting the system at a specialist garage.
- Under certain circumstances, the system may not function correctly, for example, if the vehicle is fitted with snow chains or a temporary spare wheel.

Finding a parking space

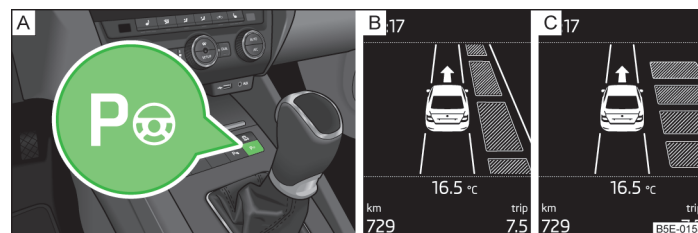


Fig. 131 System button / display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 142.

The search for a suitable parking space takes place while the display is switched off. If the display is not switched on using the symbol button until the driver drives past the parking space, the system can assess and display this parking space.

Finding a parallel parking space

- Drive past the parking space at up to 40 km/h and a distance of 0.5 – 1.5 m.
- Press the symbol button **once** » Fig. 131.

The display shows » Fig. 131 - [B].

Finding a perpendicular parking space

- Drive past the parking space at up to 20 km/h and a distance of 0.5 – 1.5 m.
- Press the symbol button **twice** » Fig. 131.

The display shows the following » Fig. 131 - [C].

The search area for the parking space on the driver's side is automatically indicated on the display.

Activate the turn signal on the driver's side if you wish to park on this side of the road. In the display the search area for the parking space is indicated on the driver's side.

If suitable parking space is found, its parameters are stored until another suitable parking space has been found or until a distance of 10 m had been driven after finding the parking space.

If the driver changes the parking mode while searching for a parking space, the symbol button **P** must be pressed again.

i Note

If the symbol $\ominus$ (km / h) is shown in the display, the vehicle speed should be reduced below 40 km / hr (parallel parking) or below 20 km / hr (Transverse parking).

Parking

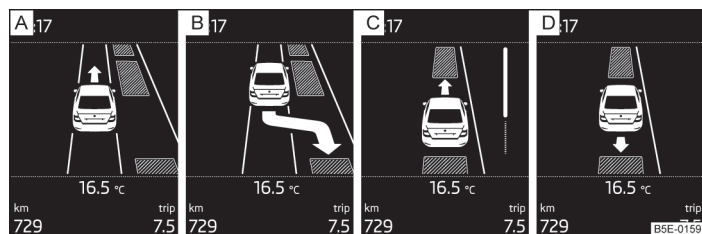


Fig. 132 Display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 142.

Explanation of graphic

- A** Parking place recognised with the information to drive on.
- B** Parking place recognised with the information to engage the reverse gear.
- C** Indication for selecting the forward gear.
- D** Indication for selecting the reverse gear.

The time limit for the parking procedure with the help of the system is 6 minutes.

If the system has recognised a suitable parking space, this parking space is shown in the display » Fig. 132 - **A**.

- Continue driving forwards until the display appears » Fig. 132 - **B**.
- Stop and ensure that the vehicle does not continue to move forward until the parking procedure starts.
- Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.

- As soon as the following message is shown in the display: **Steer. interv. Check area around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
- Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.

In the event that the parking procedure cannot be carried out in one go, the parking process is completed in further stages.

- If the arrow flashes forwards in the display » Fig. 132 - **C**, then select 1. gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

- Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol goes out.
- Carefully drive forwards.
- If the backwards arrow is flashing in the display » Fig. 132 - **D**, select reverse gear again or move the selector lever into position **R**.

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

- Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol goes out.
- Carefully move backwards.

You can repeat these steps several times in succession.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display:

Ⓜ Park Assist stopped. Take over steering!

Automatic termination

The system terminates the parking procedure if one of the following cases arises.

- Speed of more than 7 km/h repeatedly exceeded during the parking procedure.
- Time limit of 6 minutes exceeded for the parking procedure.
- System button pressed.
- TCS system switched off.
- Intervention of the driver in the automatic steering procedure (stops the steering wheel).
- Reverse gear disengaged or selector lever removed from the position **R** when reversing into the parking space.
- Selector lever moved to position **P**.
- There is a system fault (system temporarily not available).
- Automatic braking for damage limitation.

If any of the above events occurs, the following warning message is displayed. » page 145.

Manoeuvring out of a parallel parking space



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 142.

Manoeuvring out

- Press the symbol button  » Fig. 131 on page 143.
- Activate the turn signal for side of the vehicle where the parking space is out of which you wish to manoeuvre.
- Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
- As soon as the following message is shown in the display:  **Steer. interv.**
Check area around veh.!, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
- Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.
- Follow the system instructions shown in the display.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the information display:

 **Please take over steering and drive on.**

Automatic termination

The system terminates the manoeuvring procedure if one of the following cases arises.

- Speed of more than 7 km/h exceeded during the manoeuvring procedure.
- System button pressed.
- TCS system switched off.
- Intervention of the driver in the automatic steering procedure (stops the steering wheel).
- There is a system fault (system temporarily not available).
- Automatic braking for damage limitation.

If any of the above events occurs, the following warning message is displayed. » page 145.

Automatic brake assist



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 142.

The system provides assistance to the driver with automatic brake assist. The automatic brake assist does not exempt the driver from his/her responsibility for the accelerator, brake and clutch.

Automatic braking for preventing cancellations caused by excessive speeds

To prevent the speed from exceeding 7 km/h and to subsequently prevent cancellation of the parking procedure, automatic brake support is initiated. The parking procedure can be resumed after automatic braking.

Automatic braking takes place only once per parking procedure.

Automatic braking for damage limitation

The system detects an imminent collision based on the driving speed and the distance from the obstacle, automatic brake support is initiated.

The system function is ended after this automatic brake assist for damage limitation.



WARNING

- Automatic brake assist only works as an element of the assist function. The driver must always be ready to brake the vehicle him/herself.
- Automatic brake assist is ended after around 1.5 seconds. Depress the brake pedal so that the vehicle does not start moving by itself.

Information messages



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 142.

Park Assist stopped. Speed too high.

If a speed of 50 km / h is exceeded while searching for a parking space, the system with the key symbol is  must be reactivated.

Speed too high. Take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because the speed was exceeded. Park with a max. speed of 7 km/h.

Park Assist stopped. Driver steer. interv.

The parking procedure is terminated due to a driver steering intervention.

Park Assist finished. ASR deactivated.

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because the TCS system is deactivated. Activate the TCS.

ASR deactivated. Take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because TCS was deactivated during the parking procedure.

M Trailer: Park Assist stopped.

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because a trailer is hitched.

M Time limit exceeded. Take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because the time limit of 6 minutes was passed.

M Park Assist currently not available.

The system cannot be activated because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

M Park Assist stopped. Not available.

The parking procedure was ended because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

M Park Assist faulty. Workshop!

The parking procedure is not possible because a fault exists in the system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

M ASR intervention. Take over steering!

The parking procedure is terminated by a TCS intervention.

M Park Assist: indicate and engage reverse

The prerequisites for manoeuvring out of a parking space using the system have been met. Switch on the turn signals and shift into reverse.

M Aut. parking space exit not possible. Space too small.

The manoeuvring procedure using the system is not possible. The parking gap is too small.

M Braking intervention. Speed too high.

The driving speed during the parking procedure was too high - automatic brake assist is initiated.

Cruise Control System

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Activating/deactivating	147
Storing and maintaining speed	147
Changing the stored speed	147
Switching off temporarily	147
Information on the display	148

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed, more than 25 km/h, without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

The warning light  illuminates in the instrument cluster when the cruise control system is switched on.

! WARNING

- For safety reasons, the cruise control system must not be used in dense traffic or on unfavourable road surfaces (such as icy roads, slippery roads, loose gravel) – risk of accident!
- The saved speed may only be resumed if it is not too high for the current traffic conditions.
- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent unintentional switching on of the system.

! CAUTION

- The cruise control system is not able to maintain a constant speed when driving in areas with very steep gradients. The weight of the vehicle increases the speed at which it travels. In such cases, a lower gear should be engaged or the foot-brake applied.
- It is not possible to switch on the cruise control system if the first gear or reverse gear is engaged (Vehicles fitted with a manual transmission)
- The cruise control system cannot be activated when the selector lever is in positions **P**, **N** or **R** (vehicles with automatic transmission).

- The Cruise Control System may automatically switch off when some brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervene, when the speed exceeds maximum permissible engine speed, or a similar event takes place.
- The Cruise Control System also remains activated after shifting the gear!

Activating/deactivating

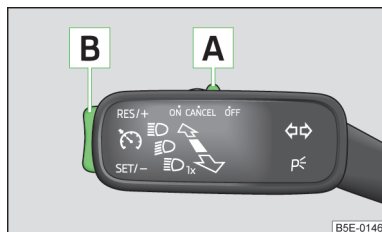


Fig. 133
Operating lever: Cruise control
system controls

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 146.

Activating

- Move switch » Fig. 133 into the ON position.

Deactivating

- Move switch » Fig. 133 into the OFF position.

Storing and maintaining speed

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 146.

- Activate the cruise control system » page 147.
- Drive at the desired speed.
- Push the rocker button into the SET/- » Fig. 133 on page 147 position.

After you have released the rocker button from the SET/- position, the speed you have just stored is kept constant without having to depress the accelerator.

Changing the stored speed



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 146.

Increasing the speed with the rocker button

- Push the rocker button into the RES/+ » Fig. 133 on page 147 position.

If the rocker button is held in the RES/+ position, the speed will increase continuously. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

Decreasing the speed with the rocker button

The stored speed can be **reduced** by pushing the rocker switch into the SET/- » Fig. 133 on page 147 position.

If the rocker button is pressed and held in the SET/- position, the speed will decrease continuously. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

If the rocker button is released at a speed of less than approx. 25 km/h, the speed is not stored and the memory is erased. Once the speed of the vehicle has increased to more than approx. 25 km/h, the speed must then be stored again by pushing the rocker button into the SET/- position.

Increasing the speed with the accelerator

- Depress the accelerator pedal.

Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Decreasing the speed with the brake pedal

The speed can also be reduced by depressing the brake pedal, which temporarily deactivates the system » page 147.

Switching off temporarily

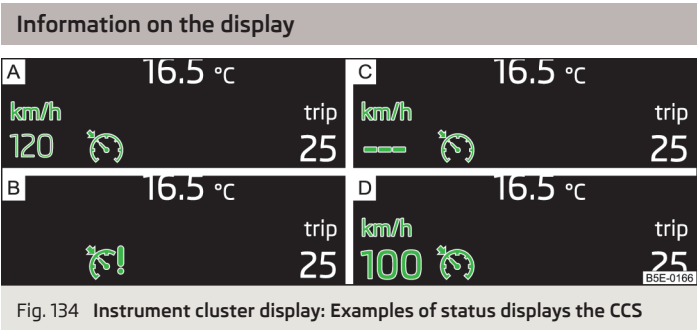


First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 146.

The cruise control system is **temporarily switched off** by pressing the switch » Fig. 133 on page 147 into the spring-tensioned position CANCEL or by depressing the brake pedal.

The set speed remains stored in the memory.

Briefly push the rocker button **B** into the **RES/+** position in order to **resume** the stored speed after the clutch or brake pedal is released.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **B** on page 146.

Explanation of graphic

- A** The GRA is temporarily switched off.
- B** System fault. Seek help from a specialist garage.
- C** The speed memory is blank.
- D** The GRA is switched on.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Instructions and Information	148
Radar sensor	149
Operation	150
Automatic stop-start	151
Operation Overview	151
Start control	152

Stop/resume control	152
Set/change the desired speed	152
Set time interval level	153
Special driving conditions	153
Information messages	154

Adaptive cruise control (From here on referred to only as ACC) can maintain the set speed or the proximity to the vehicle ahead consistently, without the need to operate the gas or brake pedals.

The state in which the ACC maintains the speed or the proximity is described as **control** from here on.

WARNING

- The ACC only works as an aid - it does not absolve the driver of the responsibility to maintain full control over the vehicle's steering.
- Always adapt your speed and safety proximity to the vehicle ahead to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The driver must always be ready to take over steering of the vehicle himself (accelerate or brake).

Note

- The ACC is designed primarily for use on motorways.
- Some ACC notifications in the display of the instrument cluster may be hidden by notifications for other functions. An ACC notification automatically appears for a brief moment when there is a change in status of the ACC.

Instructions and Information

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **B** on page 148.

WARNING

- The ACC does not react when approaching a stationary obstacle, such as traffic jams, vehicle breakdowns or vehicles waiting at a traffic light.
- The ACC does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.

! WARNING (Continued)

- If the ACC does not decelerate fast enough, immediately apply the vehicle's footbrake.
- Control may only be resumed if the stored speed is not too high for the current traffic conditions.

! WARNING

For safety reasons, do not use the ACC under the following conditions.

- When driving in turning lanes, motorway exits or construction sites, to avoid an unwanted acceleration to the stored speed.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- When road conditions are poor (e.g. ice, slippery road, gravel, dirt road).
- When driving around "sharp" bends.
- When riding on a steep gradient / high slope.

! CAUTION

- It is not possible to switch on the control on vehicles fitted with a **manual transmission** if the first gear or reverse gear is engaged.
- It is not possible to switch on the control on vehicles fitted with an **automatic transmission**, if the selector lever is in the position **P**, **N** or **R**.
- The control may automatically switch off when some brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervene, when the maximum permissible engine speed is exceeded, etc.

i Note

- The speed can only be set and stored when ACC is activated. The stored speed may differ from the actual speed if a proximity control procedure is in progress at the time.
- Vehicles with an automatic transmission can decelerate to a standstill and start again using the ACC.
- The ACC reduces the speed by automatically releasing the accelerator or by means of a braking procedure as appropriate. If the brakes are used for an automatic speed reduction at any moments, then the brake light illuminates.
- In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the electrically connected trailer, the ACC becomes unavailable.

Radar sensor

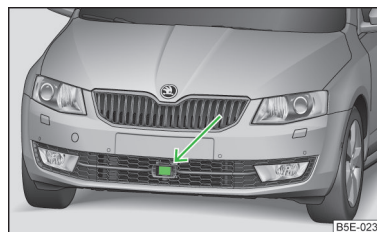


Fig. 135
Mounting location of the radar sensor



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 148.

The radar sensor » Fig. 135 (From here on referred to as sensor) is used to assess the traffic situation in front of the vehicle.

The sensor can distinguish objects by radiating and receiving electromagnetic waves.

The sensor function may be impaired in the events of one of the following.

- The sensor is covered by mud, snow or debris, for example.
- The sensor or its immediate surroundings are covered by other objects, for example, a sticker is attached.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).

If the sensor is dirty or does not have "visibility" for any other reason, the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

M ACC: no sensor view!

Stop the car, switch off the engine and clean the sensor or eliminate the obstacle causing the lack of "visibility". Should the ACC still be unavailable after the engine is restarted, **OFF** » Fig. 138 on page 151 push the lever into position. Seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING

- If you suspect that the sensor is damaged, deactivate the ACC. Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- The sensor can become misaligned by collisions or by damage to the front of the vehicle, the wheel arch or the underside of the vehicle. This can lead to an impairment of the ACC function - risk of accidents! If this is the case, have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- Any improperly carried out work to the front of the vehicle may cause the sensor to become misaligned. We therefore recommend only having these modifications and technical alterations carried out by a specialist garage. Please also observe the instructions in » [page 200](#), *Service work, adjustments and technical alterations*.
- The area in front of and around the sensor must not be covered with stickers, additional lights or similar items. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents!

! CAUTION

The sensor may not be able to distinguish all objects correctly under certain circumstances. We therefore recommend that you avoid using the ACC in the following cases.

- When driving through places where metal objects (such as metal buildings, railroad tracks, etc.) can be found.
- When driving through very divided and enclosed spaces (such as large-capacity garages, car ferries, tunnels and the like.).

! CAUTION

Remove the snow with a brush and the ice with a solvent-free de-icer.

Operation

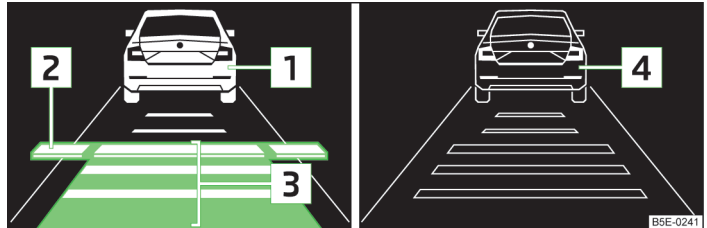


Fig. 136 Instrument cluster display (ACC): Set proximity, recognized vehicle

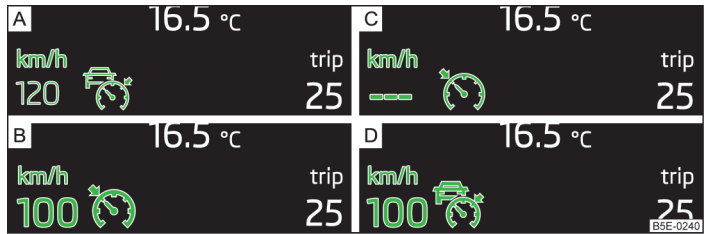


Fig. 137 Instrument cluster display: Examples of ACC status displays.

- First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 148.

The ACC can be controlled and the settings adjusted using the control lever » [Fig. 138](#) on page 151 or in the infotainment » *infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR key).

Explanation of graphic » [Fig. 136](#)

- 1 Vehicle detected (control active).
- 2 Line, which indicates the time interval delay when adjusting.
- 3 Set time interval to the vehicle ahead.
- 4 Vehicle detected (control deactivated).

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 137

- A** Control deactivated (vehicle detected).
- B** Control activated (no vehicle detected).
- C** Control deactivated (no speed stored).
- D** Control activated (vehicle detected).

The ACC can consistently maintain the set speed of 30-160 km/h, as well as the proximity to the vehicle ahead ranging from a very small to a very large time interval.

The ACC adjusts the set speed with respect to the detected vehicle ahead, thus maintaining the selected proximity.

If the ACC does not decelerate fast enough with respect to the vehicle ahead, the symbol  and the following message both appear in the instrument cluster display.

Apply the brake!

Take over the steering and apply the brake!

The ACC can detect a vehicle that is up to approx. 120m ahead using the radar sensor .

Automatic stop-start

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 148.

Vehicles with an **automatic transmission** can decelerate to a standstill and start moving again using the ACC.

Decelerate to a standstill

If a vehicle ahead decelerates to a standstill, the ACC will also decelerate your vehicle to a standstill.

Starting to drive again after a holding period

As soon as the vehicle ahead starts moving again after a holding period, your vehicle will also move and the speed will continue to be regulated. Control is automatically disconnected in case of longer holding periods.

Take over the steering and apply the brake.

Operation Overview

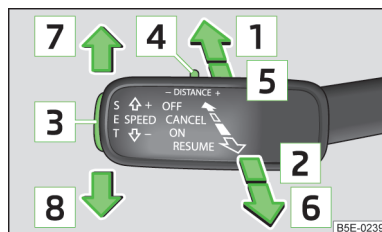


Fig. 138
Operating lever



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 148.

Overview of ACC functions operated with the lever

- 1 OFF** Deactivate ACC
- 2 ON** Activate ACC (control deactivated)
- 3 SET** Start control (adopt current speed) / Reduce speed by 1 km/h at a time
- 4 - DISTANCE +** Set proximity level
- 5 CANCEL** Stop control (sprung position)
- 6 RESUME** Start control (resume) / increase speed by 1 km/h at a time (sprung position)
- 7 SPEED +** Increase speed by 10 km/h at a time
- 8 SPEED -** Decrease speed by 10 km/h at a time



Note

If the lever is set » Fig. 138 from the position **OFF** directly into the sprung position **RESUME**, the current speed is stored and the control is started.

Start control



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 148.

Basic requirements for start of control

- ✓ ACC is enabled.
- ✓ TCS is enabled » [page 137](#), *Brake assist systems*.
- ✓ On vehicles with a manual transmission, the second gear or higher must be engaged.
- ✓ On vehicles with a manual transmission, the current speed must be higher than approx. 25 km/h.
- ✓ On vehicles with an automatic transmission, the selector lever must be in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position.
- ✓ On vehicles with an automatic transmission, the current speed must be higher than approx. 2 km/h.

The control be started with the key **SET** or by adjusting the lever into the sprung position **RESUME** » [Fig. 138](#) on page 151.

Button SET

- Press **SET** the key.

The ACC will take over the current speed and executes control.

Lever position RESUME

- Set the lever into the sprung position **RESUME**.

The ACC will take over the current speed and executes control. Should the speed be stored already, the ACC adopts this speed and executes control.

If control is enabled, the green indicator light  illuminates in the warning light bar.



Note

- If control is started at a speed of less than 30 km/h on vehicles with an automatic transmission, the speed of 30 km/h is stored. The speed increases automatically to 30 km/h or is regulated with respect to the speed of the vehicle ahead.
- When TCS is disabled, it will be activated automatically upon starting control.
- If the TCS is deactivated during control, control is stopped automatically.

Stop/resume control



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 148.

Stop control

- Set the lever into the sprung position **CANCEL** » [Fig. 138](#) on page 151.

or

- Apply the brake.

Control stops, the speed remains stored.

Resume control

- Start control » [page 152](#).



Note

Control is also stopped when the clutch is held down for longer than 30 s.

Set/change the desired speed



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 148.

The desired speed can be set or changed using the control lever» [page 151](#).

The set speed is stored upon releasing the lever or the button on the button on the lever.

Set/change speed by 10 km/h at a time(SPEED) - Requirements

- ✓ ACC is enabled.

Increase speed by 1 km/h at a time (RESUME) - Requirements

- ✓ ACC is enabled.
- ✓ Vehicle control ensues.

Decrease speed by 1 km/h at a time (SET) - Requirements

- ✓ ACC is enabled.
- ✓ Vehicle control ensues.

Change speed by adopting the current speed(SET) - Requirements

- ✓ ACC is enabled.
- ✓ The vehicle is moving at a speed **other** than that which is stored.

i Note

- If during control the speed is increased by pressing the accelerator, control is temporarily stopped. Upon releasing the accelerator, control is automatically resumed.
- If during control the speed is reduced by applying the brake, control is stopped. Control needs to be restarted in order to resume » [page 152](#).
- If the vehicle is controlled by a lower speed than the stored speed, then **SET** the current speed is stored by the first press of the button , press the button again **SET** and the speed is reduced in increments of 1 km / h.

Set time interval level



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 148.

The proximity to the vehicle ahead can be set with the lever » [Fig. 138](#) on page 151 or in the Infotainment » *infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)* .

Setting by means of the lever

➤ Set the switch **DISTANCE** in the sprung position  or  » [Fig. 138](#) on page 151.

The display of the instrument cluster shows line **2** » [Fig. 136](#) on page 150, which indicates the proximity.

➤ Using the switch **DISTANCE** on the lever, adjust line **2** to the desired proximity level.

i Note

- If the proximity is changed in the infotainment, the change will only come into effect after a subsequent activation of the ACC.
- The proximity is dependent on the speed. The higher the speed, the greater the proximity to the vehicle ahead.
- On wet roads, a longer time interval to the vehicle ahead should always be selected than on dry roads.

Special driving conditions

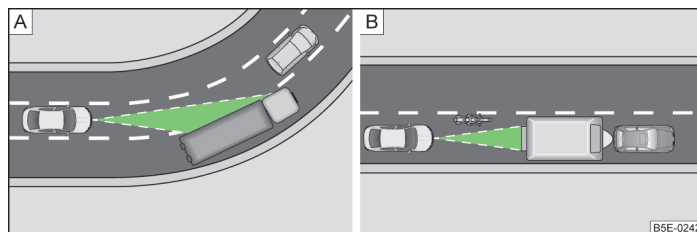


Fig. 139 Special conditions: Cornering / narrow vehicles or vehicles traveling side by side

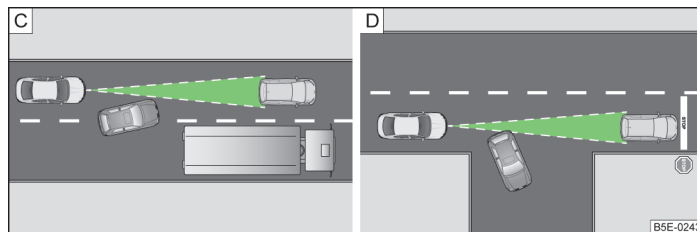


Fig. 140 Special conditions: Lane changes of other vehicles / stationary vehicles



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 148.

The following and similar situations require special attention of the driver.

When cornering

When driving around long bends the ACC may respond to a vehicle in the adjacent lane » [Fig. 139](#) - **A**. Your own vehicle is regulated with respect to this vehicle and will no longer respond to the vehicle ahead.

In such cases, control should be disabled by accelerating, applying the brake or pressing the button on the operating lever . **CANCEL** » [Fig. 138](#) on page 151 .

Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side

Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side are not detected by the radar sensor until they are within the sensor's range » Fig. 139 - B. This is especially true for narrow vehicles, such as motorcycles.

If necessary, slow down the car by applying the brake.

Other vehicles changing lanes

Vehicles that change onto the lane with a small proximity » Fig. 140 - C do not have to be detected by the radar sensor in time. The result may be a delayed ACC response.

If necessary, slow down the car by applying the brake.

Stationary vehicles

The ACC does not detect stationary objects! When a vehicle detected by the ACC turns or sheers off and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, » Fig. 140 - D the ACC does not respond to the stationary vehicle.

In such cases, take over the steering and apply the brake.

When overtaking

When your vehicle is being controlled (the speed is lower than that which is stored) and the indicator is activated, the ACC interprets that the driver intends to overtake. The ACC automatically accelerates the vehicle, thereby reducing the proximity to a vehicle ahead.

If the vehicle changes to the fast lane and no vehicle is detected ahead, the ACC accelerates until the set speed is reached and then keeps it constant.

Acceleration can be cancelled at any time by touch on the brake pedal or pressing the button **CANCEL** on the control lever » Fig. 138 on page 151.

Vehicles with special load or special body parts

Other vehicles with a load or with body parts protruding from the sides, back or top of the vehicle contour may not be detected by the ACC.

Control should therefore be disabled whenever you are driving behind or overtaking such a vehicle.

Towing a trailer

When towing a trailer, the ACC control will be less powerful. The manner of driving should therefore be adapted to this limitation.

Information messages



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 148.

If the symbol  appears in the instrument cluster display when ACC is enabled, it means that the ACC is not working.

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

M ACC: no sensor view!

The sensor is dirty or has no "visibility". Stop the car, switch off the engine and clean the sensor or remove the obstacle causing the lack of "visibility" » Fig. 135 on page 149. Should the ACC still be unavailable after the engine is restarted, push the lever into position **OFF** » Fig. 138 on page 151. Seek help from a specialist garage.

M ACC not available.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If the ACC is still not available, push the lever into position **OFF**. Seek help from a specialist garage.

M Error: ACC

There is an ACC system error. Push the lever into position **OFF**. Seek help from a specialist garage.

M Speed limit

Increase the speed accordingly and start control » page 152.

Area monitoring system (Front Assist)



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Instructions and Information	155
Radar sensor	155
Operation	156
Activating/deactivating	157
"City"Emergency braking	157
Information messages	158 ►

The area monitoring system (From here on only referred to as Front Assist) warns you of the danger of a collision with an obstacle in front of the vehicle and tries to avoid a collision or mitigate its consequences by automatically applying the brakes as appropriate.

! WARNING

- Front Assist only works as an aid, it does absolve the driver of the responsibility to maintain full control over the vehicle's steering.
- Front Assist has physical and system related limitations. For this reason, the driver may experience some undesired or delayed system responses in certain situations. You should therefore always be alert and ready to intervene!
- Always adapt your speed and safety proximity to the vehicle ahead to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- If Front Assist gives a warning, then, depending on the traffic situation, immediately slow down the car by applying the brakes or avoid the obstacle.
- The increased safety through the Front Assist system must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of accident!
- The driver must always be ready to take over steering of the vehicle himself (brake or accelerate).
- Front Assist does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.

Instructions and Information



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 154.

Front Assist may become impaired in the following situations, for example.

- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- Driving around "sharp" bends.
- When fully pressing down the accelerator pedal.
- If there is a fault with the Front Assist system.
- When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.

! WARNING

- In the following situations, Front Assist should be switched off for safety reasons.
- When the vehicle is being towed away.

! WARNING (Continued)

- When the vehicle is on a rolling test bench.
- When an undesired activation has repeatedly occurred.
- When on a truck, train or a car ferry service or the like.

! CAUTION

Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side are not detected by Front Assist via the radar sensor until they are within the sensor's range. This is especially true for narrow vehicles, such as motorcycles.

i Note

In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the electrically connected trailer, Front Assist not available.

Radar sensor

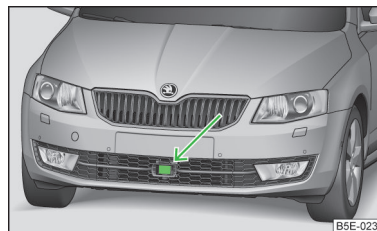


Fig. 141
Mounting location of the radar sensor



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 154.

The radar sensor » Fig. 141 (From here on referred to as sensor) is used to assess the traffic situation in front of the vehicle.

The sensor can distinguish objects by radiating and receiving electromagnetic waves.

The sensor function may be impaired in the events of one of the following.

- The sensor is covered by mud, snow or debris, for example.
- The sensor or its immediate surroundings are covered by other objects, for example, a sticker is attached.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).

If the sensor is dirty or does not have "visibility" for any other reason, the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

M Front Assist: no sensor view.

Stop the car, switch off the engine and clean the sensor or eliminate the obstacle causing the lack of "visibility". Should Front Assist still be unavailable after the engine is restarted, consult a specialist garage for help.

! WARNING

- If you suspect that the sensor is damaged, deactivate Front Assist. Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- The sensor can become misaligned by collisions or by damage to the front of the vehicle, the wheel arch or the underside of the vehicle. This can lead to impaired function of the Front Assist function - risk of accidents! If this is the case, have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- Any improperly carried out work to the front of the vehicle may cause the sensor to become misaligned. We therefore recommend only having these modifications and technical alterations carried out by a specialist garage. Please also observe the instructions in » [page 200](#), *Service work, adjustments and technical alterations*.
- The area in front of and around the sensor must not be covered with stickers, additional lights or similar items. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents!

! WARNING

The sensor may not be able to distinguish all objects correctly under certain circumstances. You should therefore not use Front Assist in the following cases - risk of accidents!

- When driving through places where metal objects (such as metal buildings, railroad tracks, etc.) can be found.
- When driving through very divided and enclosed spaces (such as large-capacity garages, car ferries and the like.)

! CAUTION

Remove the snow with a brush and the ice with a solvent-free de-icer.

Operation

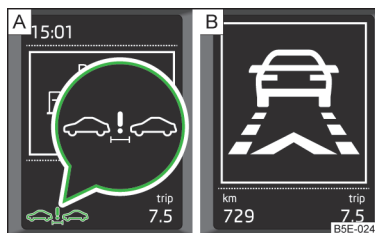


Fig. 142
Instrument cluster display: Note (dangerous proximity) / advance warning or intervention of the city emergency braking function



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on [page 154](#).

Front Assist assists the driver while driving in the following ways:

- Alerts you about a dangerous proximity to the vehicle ahead.
- Warns you of an impending collision.
- Prepares the brakes for emergency braking prior to a detected danger.
- Assists with a brake action triggered by the driver.
- If the driver fails to respond to a detected danger, an automatic brake action is performed.

Front Assist can work only if the following basic conditions are met.

- ✓ Front Assist is enabled.
- ✓ TCS is enabled » [page 137](#), *Brake assist systems*.
- ✓ The vehicle is traveling forwards at a speed of more than approx. 5 km/h.

proximity warning (dangerous proximity)

If a safe time interval to the vehicle ahead is exceeded, the display of the instrument cluster shows the symbol » [Fig. 142 - A](#).

Immediately increase the proximity if the current traffic situation allows you to do so!

The proximity at which the warning is displayed depends on the current speed.

The warning may occur when driving between about 60 km/h and 210 km/h.

Advance warning

If Front Assist detects a risk of collision with a vehicle ahead, a symbol appears in the display of the instrument cluster and an acoustic signal is heard » Fig. 142 - B. At the same time, the braking system is prepared for possible emergency braking.

The advance warning may occur when driving between 30 km/h and 210 km/h.

Apply the brakes or avoid the obstacle!

Acute alert

If the driver does not react to the advance warning, Front Assist briefly applies the brake automatically via an active brake intervention to draw attention to the potential danger of a collision again.

Automatic Braking

If the driver fails to respond to the acute warning, Front Assist starts to apply the brakes automatically with increasing stopping power in several stages.

Front Assist can help to mitigate the consequences of a potential accident by means of a speed reduction.

Brake Support

If the driver does not brake sufficiently in case of an imminent collision, Front Assist can increase the braking power, thereby reducing the consequences of a potential accident.

The brake support only occurs as long as the brake pedal is being firmly pressed down.

! CAUTION

The automatic braking interventions by Front Assist can be terminated by pressing the clutch or the accelerator, or by moving the steering wheel.

i Note

If an automatic brake intervention is triggered by Front Assist, the pressure in the brake system increases and the brake pedal cannot be operated with the normal pedal stroke.

Activating/deactivating



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 154.

Front Assist is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

Front Assist should only be disabled in exceptional cases.

Activate / deactivate front assist

Front Assist can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)* or in the MAXI-DOTDis-
play » *page 32, Menu item wizard*.

By disabling the system, the proximity warning system and the advance warning are also deactivated.

Activate/deactivate proximity warning

The proximity warning indicator can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

The set proximity warning remains active even after stopping and starting the ignition.

Activate/deactivate advance warning

The advance warning can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

The set advance warning remains active even after stopping and starting the ignition.

"City"Emergency braking



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 154.

The "City"Emergency braking function (From here on referred to only as the emergency brake function) is a component of the Front Assist system.

The emergency brake function assists the driver when driving as follows.

- Prepares the brakes for emergency braking prior to a detected danger.
- If the driver fails to respond to a detected danger, an automatic brake action occurs with stopping power that increases in several stages.

The emergency brake function intervenes when driving between about 5 km/h and 34 km / h.

The emergency brake function is automatically activated or deactivated together with the Front Assist system.

If the emergency brake function triggers an automatic brake action, the display of the instrument cluster shows the symbol » Fig. 142 on page 156 - [B].

WARNING

The emergency brake function can slow down the vehicle to a complete standstill. If the vehicle continues to roll forward after stopping, then it should be stopped with the footbrake.

CAUTION

Automatic braking interventions by the emergency brake function can be terminated by pressing the clutch or the accelerator, or by moving the steering wheel.

Note

If an automatic brake intervention is triggered by the emergency brake function, the pressure in the brake system increases and the brake pedal cannot be operated with the normal pedal stroke.

Information messages

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings [A] on page 154.**

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

 **Front Assist: no sensor view.**

The sensor is dirty or has no "visibility". Stop the car, switch off the engine and clean the sensor or remove the obstacle causing the lack of "visibility" » Fig. 135 on page 149 . If the message appears again after starting the engine, the system should be disabled » page 157. Seek help from a specialist garage.

 **Front Assist not available.**

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If the message appears again after starting the engine, the system should be disabled » page 157. Seek help from a specialist garage.

START-STOP

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Starting/shutting down the engine	159
Operating conditions of the system	160
Manually activating/deactivating the system	160
Information messages	161

The START-STOP system helps you to save fuel while at the same time reducing harmful exhaust emissions and CO₂ emissions.

The function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

In the start-stop mode, the engine automatically switches to the vehicle's idle phase, e.g. when stopped at traffic lights. The engine restarts automatically where necessary.

Information about the current status of the system can be displayed in the Infotainment display » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

The system can work only if the following basic conditions are met.

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- ✓ The bonnet is closed.
- ✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km.h after the last stop.
- ✓ No trailer is coupled.

WARNING

- The brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running.
- Never let the vehicle roll with the engine switched off.

CAUTION

Always deactivate the START-STOP system before driving through water » page 135.

i Note

- If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode on vehicles with manual transmission or automatic transmission (when the selector lever is in position **P**), the engine must be started manually » [page 121](#).
- After manually starting the engine on vehicles with manual transmission, automatic engine shut down is not possible until the vehicle has travelled the required minimum distance for START-STOP mode.
- If on vehicles with automatic transmission, the selector lever **D/S** or **N** is selected after moving in reverse, the vehicle will first need to achieve a speed greater than 10 km/h before automatic engine shut down takes place again.
- Changes to the outdoor temperature can have an effect on the internal temperature of the vehicle battery even after several hours. If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the START STOP system.
- If the Climatronic is running in automatic mode, it is possible that under certain conditions the engine may not switch off automatically.

Starting/shutting down the engine

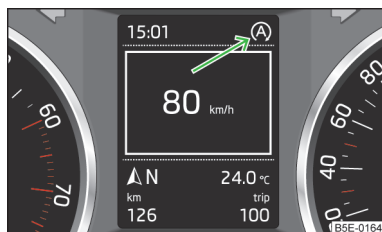


Fig. 143
Instrument cluster display: Engine shut down (STOP phase)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 158.

Vehicles with manual transmission

- Stop the vehicle (where necessary, apply the handbrake).
- Put the gear stick into Neutral.
- Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic engine shut down (STOP phase) takes place. A check warning icon appears in the display (A) » [Fig. 143](#).

- Depress the clutch pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again (START phase). The warning icon goes out.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

- Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.

Automatic engine shut down takes place. A check warning icon appears in the display (A) » [Fig. 143](#).

- Release the brake pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again. The warning icon goes out.

Further information on automatic transmission

Engine shut down takes place when the selector lever is in positions **P**, **D/S**, **N** and in Tiptronic mode.

- When the selector lever is in position **P** the engine remains shut down after you release the brake pedal. Start the engine by pressing the gas pedal or by moving the selector lever into a different mode and releasing the brake pedal.

If the selector lever is moved into position **R** during the **STOP phase**, the engine will re-start.

There is no automatic engine shutdown if the system detects a vehicle movement due to a large steering angle, or when the selector lever is moved to position **R** (e.g. when parking).

No automatic engine shutdown takes place when the vehicle is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam or when tuning) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shutdown takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.

Operating conditions of the system

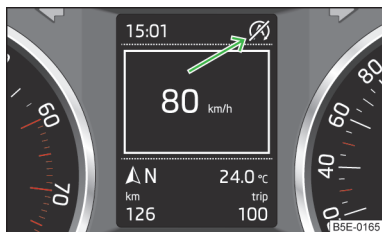


Fig. 144
Instrument cluster display: Engine shut down is not currently available

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 158.

The START-STOP system is very complex. Some of the procedures are hard to check without servicing.

No engine shut down is carried out

Before each STOP phase, the system checks whether certain conditions have been met. No engine shut down takes place in the following situations.

- The engine has not reached the minimum temperature for START STOP mode.
- The temperature inside the vehicle has not reached the desired temperature set in the air-conditioning system/heating.
- The external temperature is very low/high.
- The windscreen heater is switched on.
- The intensive windscreen heater (Climatronic) or windscreen heater/ventilation is switched on with the maximum air temperature setting (manual air conditioning system).
- The parking aid/Park Assist is switched on.
- The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The stationary vehicle is on a steep slope or a steep downhill section.
- The idling speed is too high.

A check warning icon appears in the display » Fig. 144.

The automatic start procedure takes place again

During the STOP phase, the engine fires up without any active driver intervention, e.g. in the following situations.

- The vehicle begins to roll, e.g. on a slope.
- The difference between the temperature setting of the air-conditioning system/heating and the temperature of the interior is too large.

- The windscreen heater is switched on.
- The intensive windscreen heater (Climatronic) or windscreen heater/ventilation is switched on with the maximum air temperature setting (manual air conditioning system).
- The brake pedal was pressed several times (the pressure in the braking system is too low).
- The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The current consumption is too high.

Manually activating/deactivating the system



Fig. 145
Button for the START-STOP system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 158.

Activation/deactivation

- Press the symbol button » Fig. 145.

When start-stop mode is deactivated, the warning light in the button lights up.

Note

- If the system is deactivated during the STOP phase, the automatic start procedure takes place.
- Selecting the driving mode Eco when the system is deactivated will automatically activate the system » page 161.

Information messages



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 158.

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

M Start the engine manually!

S START MANUALLY

The driver sees this message when the conditions for the automatic start procedure are not met during the STOP phase. The engine must be started manually » page 121.

M Error: start-stop system

S START STOP ERROR

Error in the START-STOP system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Driving mode



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Selecting driving mode	161
Normal Mode	162
Sportmode	162
Ecomode	162
Individualmode	163

Selecting the driving mode allows you to adjust a range of different driving parameters for the vehicle.

The set driving mode remains stored even after switching the ignition on and off.



WARNING

- Setting the driving mode while driving can distract you from other traffic – risk of accident.
- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.



Note

The driver can change some vehicle functions irrespective of the selected driving mode. For instance, in the driving mode Eco, the driver can switch the automatic transmission to the mode S.

Selecting driving mode

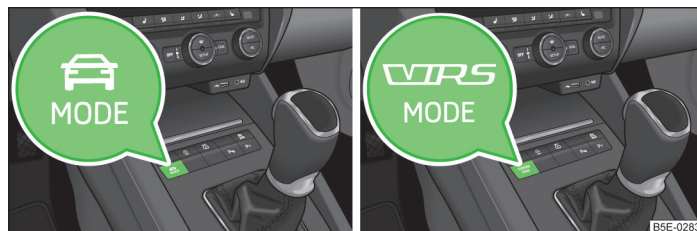


Fig. 146 Button for selecting the driving mode: Octavia, Octavia Combi / Fabia RS Octavia RS



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 161.

The menu for selecting the driving mode allows you to set the vehicle to one of the three preset driving modes Normal, Sport and Eco, or to the driving mode Individual which allows individual settings.

The selected driving mode is accessed by pressing the symbol button  or **VRS MODE** » Fig. 146, and the menu is opened in the Infotainment display. More information about setting the driving mode » operating instructions for Infotainment, chapter *Vehicle settings*.

If a driving mode other than Normal is selected, then the symbol lights up on the button  or  » [Fig. 146](#).

Normal Mode



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 161.

The relevant systems are set for a general type of vehicle use.

This mode is suitable for common everyday use.

Sportmode



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 161.

This mode is suitable for a sporty driving style.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

Engine (drive)

The accelerator pedal is more responsive to depressing the pedal, and the acceleration is more dynamic than in mode Normal.

The automatic gearbox is set automatically to mode **S** » [page 126](#).

The engine noise is noticeable in the interior more intensely than in normalmode¹⁾.

Steering

The power steering is reduced slightly, i.e., the driver needs to exert more force for steering » [page 119](#).

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

The acceleration is quicker than normal mode with distance control » [page 148](#).

Adaptive headlights (AHL)

The headlights adapt to the driving style more dynamically than in mode Normal » [page 57](#).

ProActive passenger protection

The first level of protection is deactivated » [page 163](#).

Ecomode



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 161.

This mode is suitable for a relaxed style of driving and helps to save fuel.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

Engine (drive)

The accelerator pedal is less responsive to depressing the pedal, and the acceleration is more relaxed than in mode Normal.

After pressing the button, the acceleration occurs more relaxed than in mode Normal » [page 146](#), *Cruise Control System*.

The recommended gear is controlled such to achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption » [page 27](#).

When the START-STOP system was deactivated manually » [page 158](#), it is automatically activated.

The automatic gearbox is set automatically to mode **E** » [page 126](#).

The engine noise is felt less intensely in the interior less than in normalmode¹⁾.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

The acceleration occurs more relaxed than in Normal » [page 148](#) mode with distance control.

Adaptive headlights (AHL)

The system is automatically deactivated » [page 57](#).

Air conditioning (Climatronic)

The air conditioning is controlled so as to save energy. For this reason, for example, it may take longer to reach the desired interior temperature in mode Normal. ►

¹⁾ Applies to Octavia RS, Octavia RS.

Note

- The Eco driving mode is not available when towing a trailer. When the vehicle is connected electrically to a trailer and is in the Eco driving mode, the Normal driving mode is configured automatically.
- The maximum vehicle acceleration (kickdown function) is possible also in driving mode Eco.

Individual mode



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 161.

In mode Individual you can select between Normal, Sport and Eco for each system separately » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.

ProActive passenger protection

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function _____ 163

WARNING

Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. The increased safety by ProActive passenger protection must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of accident!

Note

- If the front passenger front airbag is deactivated » [page 191](#) the belt tensioning function for the front passenger seat is switched off.
- The system component service life is monitored electronically. Further information » [page 19](#),  *Security Systems*.

Function



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 163.

ProActive passenger protection (From here on referred to only as system) increases passenger protection in the front seats in situations that could lead to vehicle impact or overturning.

The system is ready to intervene automatically in the following conditions.

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The vehicle moves at a speed of more than 30 km/h.

In critical driving situations (e.g. during emergency braking or a sudden change in direction), the following steps can be taken separately or combined in order to reduce the risk of serious injury.

- The front passenger's and driver's seatbelts, if worn, are automatically **tensioned** closely over the body.
- The windows in the side doors (if open) are automatically closed up to a gap of about 5 cm from the edge.
- The sliding/tilting roof is closed.

Once the critical driving situation has passed, the tension on the seatbelts will be released again.

The system operates at two levels of protection.

The first level of protection

The system already intervenes in situations that may occur during dynamic driving. As a result, this primarily helps to keep the driver and the passenger in the correct seated position.

The first level of protection can be deactivated by one of the following measures.

- Deactivation of the system in Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).
- Deactivation of TCS » [page 138](#).
- Selecting the driving mode Sport » [page 161](#).

The second level of protection

The system intervenes only if the situation is evaluated as critical, such as in panic braking at high speeds.

This level of protection cannot be deactivated.

Lane Assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	164
Activating/deactivating	165
Explanation of situations	165
Information messages	166

! WARNING

- Lane Assist only operates as a support- it does absolve the driver of the responsibility to maintain full control over the vehicle's steering.
- Lane Assist only makes the driver aware that the vehicle is approaching the line between two lanes by means of a steering intervention. The driver retains responsibility at all times for keeping the vehicle within the lane.
- Lane Assist can help you keep the vehicle within the lane. However, it does not steer the vehicle for you. The driver retains full responsibility for steering at all times.
- The camera need not be able to detect all lane lines. A steering intervention can only be made when the vehicle approaches a detected line between lanes.
- Some objects on the road may be incorrectly detected as lines. As a result, an incorrect steering intervention may take place.
- The function of adaptive lane guidance Assist system may be restricted when driving e.g. over rutted roads, on a slope, or if there are lateral winds.
- Do not use the assist system in poor weather, e.g. black ice, fog, heavy rain - risk of accident!

! WARNING

The detection capability of the camera may be limited by various external influences. In such cases, the assistant may not detect the line between two lanes at all or not properly. The detection capability of the camera may be restricted in the following situations, for example.

- When visibility conditions are poor, e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall.
- When driving around "sharp" bends.

! WARNING (Continued)

- The camera is blinded by the sun.
- The camera is blinded by the oncoming traffic.
- The viewing range of the camera is impeded by a vehicle traveling ahead.
- The camera viewing range is obstructed by an obstacle.

! CAUTION

Do not attach any stickers or similar objects to the windscreen to avoid impairing the functions of the Assist system.

i Note

- The system is designed for driving on motorways and roads with adequate longitudinal markings.
- The system can detect both continuous and broken lines.

Operation

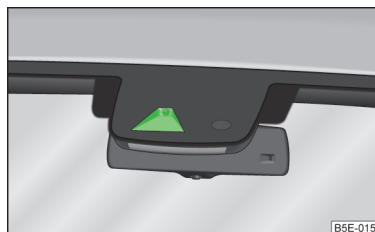


Fig. 147
Windscreen: Camera viewing
window for Lane Assist

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 164.

Lane Assist (From here on referred to only as the system), helps to keep the vehicle within the lane.

The system detects the boundary lines of a lane using the camera » Fig. 147.

When the vehicle approaches a detected line between lanes, the system makes a **light** movement of the steering wheel in the opposite direction to the boundary line. This corrective steering intervention can be overridden at any time. ►

If the turn signal is switched on prior to driving over the boundary line (e.g. when making a turn), no steering intervention takes place when the vehicle approaches the boundary line. The system regards the situation as an intended lane change.

The system can intervene when the following basic conditions are present.

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle is travelling at more than 65 km/h.
- ✓ The boundary lines are clearly visible (appropriate longitudinal markings).
- ✓ The boundary line of at least one side of the lane is detected.
- ✓ The driver's hands are on the steering wheel.
- ✓ The lane is more than 2.5 m in width.

Adaptive lane assist

Adaptive lane assist helps to keep the vehicle in the position between the boundary lines selected by the driver, by means of steering intervention.

If the system detects only one boundary line, it will help to maintain the selected proximity from said boundary line.

If the proximity to the detected boundary line is changed, the system quickly adapts and maintains the newly-selected position.

Adaptive lane assist can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

Activating/deactivating



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 164.

The system can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button) or in the MAXI DOTdisplay » *page 32*, *Menu item wizard*.

Explanation of situations

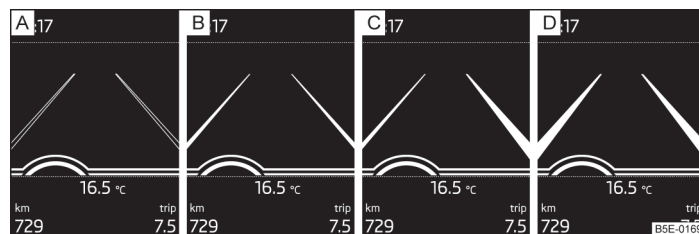


Fig. 148 Monochromatic display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system indications

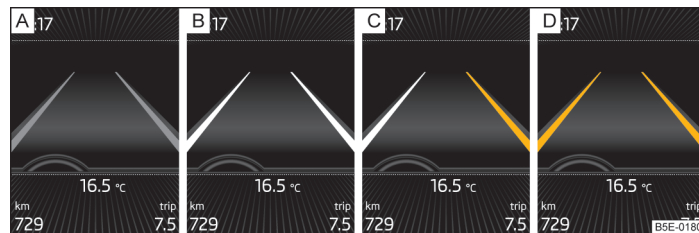


Fig. 149 Colour display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system indications



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 164.

Explanation of graphic

- A** The system is active, but not ready to intervene.
- B** The system is active and ready to intervene.
- C** The system intervenes when approaching the right-hand boundary lane.
- D** Adaptive lane assist ensues (boundary lines on both sides of the vehicle detected).

Warning lights in the instrument cluster

Illuminates	Description
	The system is active, but not ready to intervene.
	The system is active and ready to intervene or is currently intervening.

Information messages



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 164.

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

 **Lane Assist not available. No sensor view.**

The windscreen is dirty, iced over or misted up in the camera viewing range. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles.

 **Lane Assist currently not available.**

The system has limited functionality due to a temporary error. Try to re-activate the machine.

 **Error: Lane Assist**

A system error is present. Seek help from a specialist garage.

 **Lane Assist: take over steering!**

The system has detected that there are no hands on the steering wheel. In this case, the Assist system is not ready to intervene. Place your hands on the steering wheel.

Traffic sign recognition



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function	166
Notifications and settings	167
Information messages	167



WARNING

- Traffic sign detection only operates as a support. Real traffic signs always have priority over electronic displays. The driver is always responsible for correctly assessing the traffic situation.
- Traffic signs may not be recognised at all by the system, or may be recognised incorrectly. As a result, the traffic signs may not be displayed at all, or the wrong one may appear.
- Traffic sign recognition does not warn about exceeding the maximum permitted speed nor does it adjust the driving speed to the maximum speed!
- The display refers to the standard national speed units. For example, the display  is able to refer to km / h or mph, depending on the country.



Note

Traffic sign recognition is not available in all countries.

Function

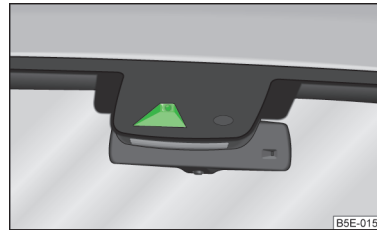


Fig. 150
Windscreen: Camera viewing range for traffic sign recognition



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 166.

Traffic sign recognition (From here on referred to only as system) allows the following traffic signs recognised by the system to be shown in the instrument cluster display.

- Speed limit
- Overtaking prohibited.

Additional signs, such as 'when wet' or signs which only apply for a limited time can also be displayed.

The system works on the basis of the data captured by the camera and is only able to show traffic signs which are in the camera's "viewing range" » Fig. 150.

Data from the camera can be supplemented by information from the Infotainment Navigation. This is the reason why traffic signs with maximum speeds can also be shown on sections of roads which do not have any traffic signs.

The system may not be available or may only be available to a limited extent in the following situations.

- Poor visibility conditions, e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall.
- The camera is blinded by the sun.
- The camera is blinded by the oncoming traffic.
- The camera "viewing range" is obstructed by an obstacle.
- Travelling at high speed.
- The traffic signs are fully or partially obscured (e.g. by trees, snow, dirt or other vehicles).
- The traffic signs are not standard (round with a red border).
- The traffic signs are damaged or bent.
- The traffic signs are attached to flashing neon signs.
- The traffic signs were changed (the navigation data are out of date).

- **Driving data**
 - **Traffic sign**

Additional display

If the menu item **Traffic sign** is currently not shown » Fig. 151 - [A], the road sign with the speed limit will appear in the upper display area of the instrument cluster » Fig. 151 - [B], [C].

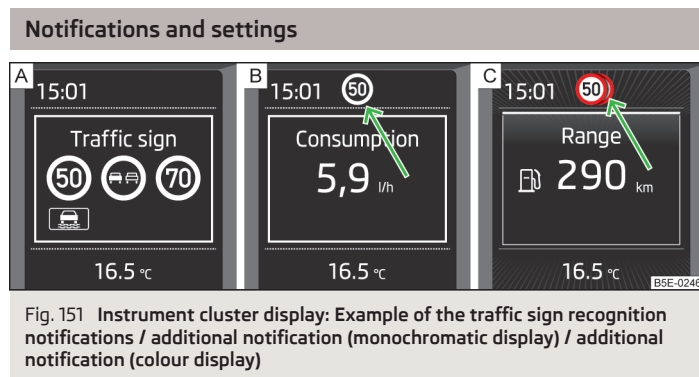
If several traffic signs are detected simultaneously, the next traffic sign will also in some cases be displayed in the colour display - [C]. All detected traffic signs can be displayed in the menu item **Traffic sign** - [A].

The additional display traffic sign detection can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

Traffic sign display when towing a trailer

When towing a trailer, displaying the traffic signs which apply when towing a trailer can be activated.

- The traffic sign detection display when towing a trailer can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 166.

The detected traffic signs are indicated in the display of the instrument cluster » page 29, *Driving data* (Multifunction display).

Information messages

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 166.

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

No restriction at present.

No maximum speeds were recognised (e.g. on German motorways where there is no speed limit).

Error: traffic sign recognition

A system error is present. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Traffic sign recognition: clean windscreen!

The windscreen is dirty, iced over or misted up in the camera viewing range. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles.

Traffic sign recognition: restricted.

Infotainment Navigation is not currently providing any data. Check whether the maps are up-to-date or the whether the vehicle is currently in a location for which no navigation data are available.

Fatigue detection (break recommendation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function	168
Information messages	168

! WARNING

- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

i Note

- In some situations, the system may evaluate the driving incorrectly and thus mistakenly recommend a break (e.g. sporty driving, in adverse weather conditions, or in bad road conditions).
- The fatigue detection system is designed primarily for motorway driving.

Function

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 168.

The fatigue detection system advises the driver on the basis of information about the steering behaviour, to take a break from driving. The system recommends a break at speeds of 65-200 km/h.

After the ignition has been switched on, the system evaluates the steering behaviour for 15 minutes. This baseline analysis is constantly compared with the current steering behaviour.

If the system detects deviations from normal steering behaviour due to possible fatigue of the driver, it recommends to take a break from driving.

The system deletes the stored baseline analysis if one of the following conditions is met.

- The vehicle is stopped and the ignition is turned off.
- The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt is taken off and the driver's door is opened.
- The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions is met or the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

The system can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment  *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

Information messages

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 168.

The icon appears and the following message for a few seconds in the display of the instrument cluster .

-  **Driver alert. Take a break!**
-  **DRIVER ALERT TAKE A BREAK**

An audible signal is also emitted.

Towing a trailer

Towing device

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description	169
Setting the ready position	170
Installing the ball rod	170
Check proper fitting	171
Removing the ball rod	171
Use and care	172

If your vehicle has already been factory-fitted with a towing device or is fitted with a towing device from ŠKODA Original Accessories, then it meets all of the technical requirements and national legal provisions for towing a trailer.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pin power socket for the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer. If the trailer that is to be towed has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Maximum Trailer drawbar load weight is **75 kg**, or **80 kg** for the Octavia Estate 4x4 vehicles.

WARNING

- Before each time you make a journey when using the ball rod, check that it is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess.
- Do not operate the ball rod if it is not correctly inserted in the mounting recess.
- Do not operate the towing device if it is damaged or incomplete.
- Do not perform any modifications or changes to the towing device.
- Never release the ball rod while the trailer is still coupled.

CAUTION

Handle the ball rod carefully to avoid damaging the paintwork on the bumper. ■

Description

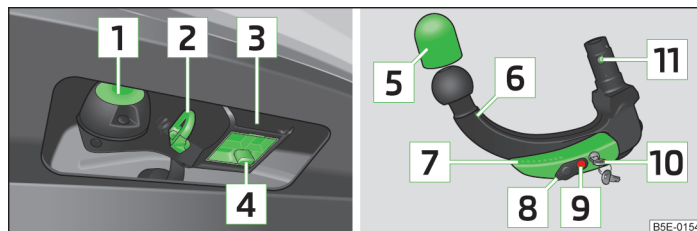


Fig. 152 Carrier of the towing device/ball rod

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 169.**

The ball rod can be removed and can be found in the spare wheel well or in a compartment for the spare wheel in the boot » [page 236](#).

Explanation of graphic

-  13-pin power socket
-  Safety eye
-  Mounting recess
-  Cap
-  Dust cap
-  Ball rod
-  Operating lever
-  Lock cap
-  Trigger pin
-  Keys
-  Locking ball

Note

If you lose the key, please get in touch with a specialist garage. ■

Setting the ready position

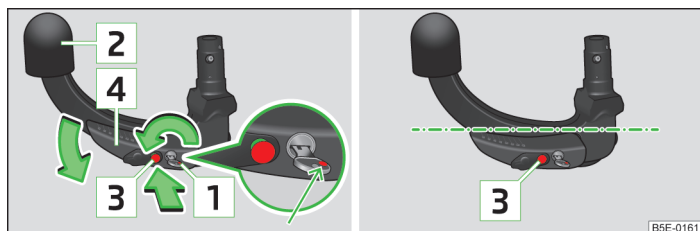


Fig. 153 Setting the ready position/ready position

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 169.

Before installing always adjust the ball rod in the ready position.

- Turn the key **1** so that its red marking is visible » Fig. 153.
- Grab the ball rod underneath the protective cap **2**.
- Press the trigger pin **3** as far as the stop in the direction of the arrow - at the same time push the lever **4** downwards as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow.

The lever remains locked in this position.

CAUTION

In the ready position, the key cannot be removed nor turned into a different position.

Installing the ball rod

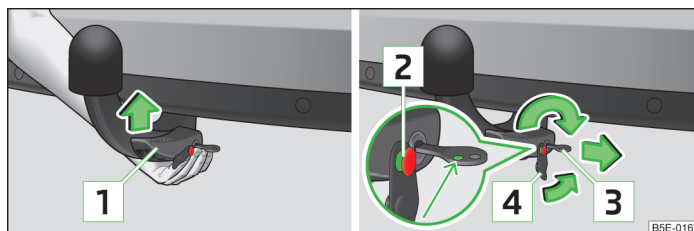


Fig. 154 Insert the ball rod/lock up the lock, and put the lock cover on

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 169.

- Pull cap **4** » Fig. 152 on page 169 downwards.
- Adjust the ball rod to the ready position » page 170.
- Grip the tow bar **from underneath** » Fig. 154 and insert into the mounting recess until you hear it click into place » .

Lever **1** turns upwards **automatically** and the release pin **2** pops out (its red and green parts are visible) » .

If the lever **1** does not turn automatically, or if the trigger pin **2** does not come out, remove the ball rod from the mounting recess by turning the lever downwards as far as it can go. Clean the wedge surfaces on the ball rod and the mounting recess.

- Lock the lock on the operating lever by turning the key **3** by 180° to the right (see green marking is visible) and remove the key in the direction of the arrow.
- Insert the cap **4** on the lock in the direction of the arrow » .
- Check the ball rod for proper attachment » page 171.

WARNING

- Keep your hands outside the lever's range of motion when attaching the ball rod – risk of finger injuries!
- Never attempt to pull the operating lever violently upwards to turn the key. Doing so would mean the ball rod is not attached correctly!

! CAUTION

- After removing the key, **always** replace the cap on the lock of the operating lever – there is a risk of dirt getting into the lock.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing device clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball rod from being attached securely!
- After removing the ball rod, always place the cap on the mounting recess.

Check proper fitting

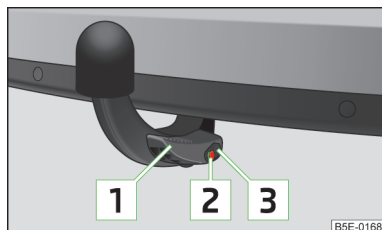


Fig. 155
Check the proper attachment of the ball rod



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 169.

Before each use of the ball rod, check that it is attached properly.

Check the following points.

- ✓ Lever **1** is up as far as it goes » Fig. 155.
- ✓ The trigger pin **2** is completely exposed (both its red and green part is visible).
- ✓ The key is removed.
- ✓ the cap **3** is on top of the lock of the operating lever.
- ✓ The ball rod does not come off the mounting recess even after strong "shaking".

! WARNING

Do not use the towing device unless the ball rod was properly locked!

Removing the ball rod

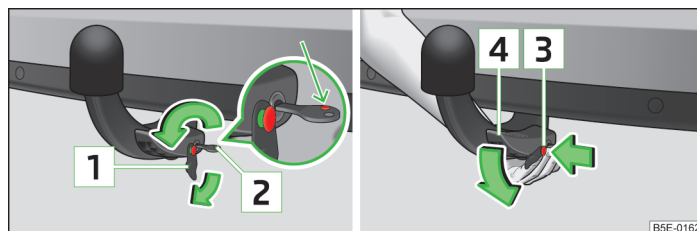


Fig. 156 Unlock the operating lever of the ball rod/removing the ball rod



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 169.

- Remove the cap **1** » Fig. 156 from the lock on the tow bar in the direction of the arrow.
- Unlock the lock on the operating lever by turning the key **2** 180° to the left so that the red marking becomes visible.
- Grab hold of the ball rod from underneath.
- Press the trigger pin **3** as far as the stop in the direction of the arrow - at the same time push the lever **4** downwards as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow.

The ball rod is released in this position and falls freely into the hand. If it does not fall freely into the hand, use your other hand to push it upwards.

At the same time, the ball rod latches into the ready position and is thus ready to be re-inserted into the mounting recess » **!**.

- Place the cap **4** » Fig. 152 on page 169 onto the mounting recess.



WARNING

Never allow the ball rod to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage to the boot upon sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk.

CAUTION

- If the lever is held firm and not pushed downwards as far as it can go, it will go back up after the ball rod is removed and will not latch into the ready position. The ball rod then needs to be brought into this position before the next time it is installed.
- Stow the ball head in the ready position with the key inserted in the box. When doing so, make the side opposite to the inserted key face downwards – there is a risk of damaging the key.
- Do not use excessive force when handling the operating lever (e.g. do not climb on it)!

Note

- We recommend putting the protective cover onto the ball head before removing the tow bar.
- Remove any dirt from the ball rod before stowing it away in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

Use and care

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 169.**

Seal the mounting recess with the cap to prevent any ingress of dirt.

Always check the ball head before hitching a trailer. Use a suitable lubricating grease where necessary.

Include the protective cap when stowing away the ball rod to protect the boot from getting contaminated.

In the event of dirt, clean the surfaces of the mounting recess and treat with a suitable preservative.

CAUTION

Apply lubricating grease to the upper part of the mounting recess. Make sure you do not remove any grease.

Trailer

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Loading a trailer	172
Driving with a trailer	173
Trailer stabilisation	174
Anti-theft alarm system	174

WARNING

Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

Loading a trailer

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 172.**

The vehicle/trailer combination must be balanced, whereby the maximum permissible drawbar load must be utilised. If the drawbar load is too low, it jeopardises the performance of the vehicle/trailer combination.

Distribution of the load

Distribute the load in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the axle as possible. Secure the items from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Drive at a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Tyre pressure

Correct the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for a "full load" » [page 229](#), *Service life of tyres*.

Trailer load

The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances » [page 263](#), *Technical data*.

The trailer loads specified apply only to **altitudes** up to 1000 metres above mean sea level.

The engine output falls as the height increases, as does the ability to climb. Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10%.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

The trailer and drawbar load information on the type plate of the towing device are merely test data for the towing device. The vehicle-specific values are detailed in the vehicle documents.

! WARNING

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle and drawbar load and the maximum permissible total or towed weight of the vehicle and the trailer – risk of accident and serious injury.
- Slipping loads can significantly impair the stability and safety of the vehicle/trailer combination – risk of accident and serious injury.

Driving with a trailer

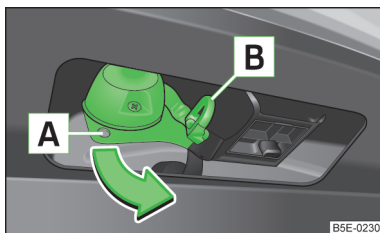


Fig. 157
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 172.

Before the journey

- Grip the 13-pin socket at point **A** and swing out in the direction of arrow » Fig. 157.
- Lift off protective cap **5** » Fig. 152 on page 169 .

After the journey

- Grip the 13-pin socket at point **A** and swing in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 157.

- Place the protective cover **5** » Fig. 152 on page 169 onto the tow bar.

Safety eye

The purpose of the safety eyelet **B** » Fig. 157 is to attach the breakaway cable of the trailer.

When attaching the breakaway cable to the safety eye, it must **sag freely** in all trailer positions (sharp bends, in reverse, etc.).

Exterior mirrors

You have to have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. The national legal requirements must be observed.

Headlights

The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.

- Adjust the headlights using the headlight beam control » page 55, *Side lights and low beam*.

Driving speed

For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 80 km/h when hitching a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes

Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

Engine overheating

If the needle for the coolant temperature gauge moves into the right-hand area or the red area of the scale, the speed must be reduced immediately.

Stop and switch off the engine if the warning light  in the display » page 22 is lit. Wait a few minutes and check the level of coolant » page 222.

The following guidelines must be observed » page 22,  *Coolant*.

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating. ▶

WARNING

- Never use the safety eye to tow a vehicle!
- Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.
- Improper or incorrectly connected electric cables can energise the trailer and cause functional faults to the vehicle's entire electrical system as well as accidents and severe injuries.
- Work on the electrical system must only be carried out by specialist garages.
- Never directly connect the trailer's electrical system with the electrical connections for the tail lights or other current sources.

Note

- After coupling the trailer and connecting up the power socket, check the rear lights on the trailer to ensure they work.
- If there is an error in the trailer lighting system, check the fuses in the fuse box in the dashboard » [page 253](#).
- Contact between the breakaway cable and the safety eye can result in mechanical wear on the protective surface of the eye. Such wear does not impair the functioning of the safety eye and is not a fault. It is excluded from the warranty coverage.
- If you tow a trailer frequently, have your car inspected between service intervals too.
- The handbrake on the towing vehicle must be put on when coupling and decoupling the trailer.

Trailer stabilisation



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on [page 172](#).

The trailer stabilisation is an extension of the stabilisation control that works in conjunction with the counter-steering assistance to reduce the amount the trailer "sways".

After turning on the ignition, the ESC warning light  in the instrument cluster lights up for about 2 seconds longer than the ABS warning light.

Function requirements for trailer stabilisation.

- ✓ The trailer was shipped from the factory or purchased from the ŠKODA genuine accessories.
- ✓ The ESC system is active. (The warning light  is lit up in the instrument cluster or  **not**).
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The speed is higher than approx. 60 km/h.
- ✓ The trailer has a rigid drawbar.

WARNING

The increased safety offered by the trailer stabilisation must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise.

CAUTION

- The trailer stabilisation need not be able to correctly detect all of driving situations.
- Trailers that sway slightly may not always be detected by the trailer stabilisation and are thus not stabilised accordingly.
- Release the pressure on the accelerator pedal if the system is being regulated.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.

Note

The trailer stabilisation works for both braked and unbraked trailers.

Anti-theft alarm system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on [page 172](#).

If the vehicle is locked, the alarm is activated when the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer is coupled or uncoupled » [page 42](#).

Conditions for including a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.

- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and a towing device.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer is functional.
- ✓ the vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

i Note

For technical reasons, trailers with rear LED lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system. ■

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Safety equipment	176
Before setting off	176
What influences driving safety?	177

In this section you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and safety of children.

WARNING

- This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and his occupants.
- You will find further information on safety, which concerns you and those travelling with you, in the following chapters of this Owner's Manual.
- The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

Safety equipment



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 176.

The following list contains only part of the safety equipment in your vehicle.

- Three-point seat belts for all the seats.
- Belt force limiters for the front seats.
- Belt tensioners for the front seats.
- Seat belt height adjusters for front seats.
- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger.
- Driver's knee airbag.
- Front side airbags.
- Rear side airbags.
- Head airbags.
- Anchoring points for child seats using the ISOFIX system.
- Anchoring points for child seats using the TOP TETHER system.
- Head restraints adjustable for height¹⁾.
- Adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations.

The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

If the seat belt is not fastened properly, this may result in injuries during an accident caused by the deployed airbag.

Before setting off



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 176.

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.

¹⁾ Not valid for sport seats.

- Secure all items of luggage » [page 91](#), *Luggage compartment*.
- Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
- Adjust the mirrors, the front seat and head restraint to your body size.
- Advise your passengers to adjust the head restraints to their body size.
- Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » [page 193](#), *Transporting children safely*.
- Adopt the correct seated position » [page 177](#), *Correct seated position*. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.
- Correctly fasten the seat belt. Also inform passengers to fasten the seat belt correctly » [page 180](#), *Using seat belts*.

What influences driving safety?



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on [page 176](#).

The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

- Do not get distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls.
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. through medication, alcohol or drugs.
- Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take regular breaks on long journeys – at least every two hours.

Correct seated position



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Correct seated position for the driver	178
Correct seated position for the front passenger	178
Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats	178
Examples of an incorrect seated position	179



WARNING

General information

- At all times, the front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to match the person's body size and the seat belt must be attached properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to passengers.
- If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to life-threatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.
- If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt.
- The seat backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!



WARNING

Information for the driver

- Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell as they may get caught behind the pedals when driving or applying the braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or accelerate.

! WARNING

Information for the front passenger

- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the dash panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury when braking or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

Correct seated position for the driver

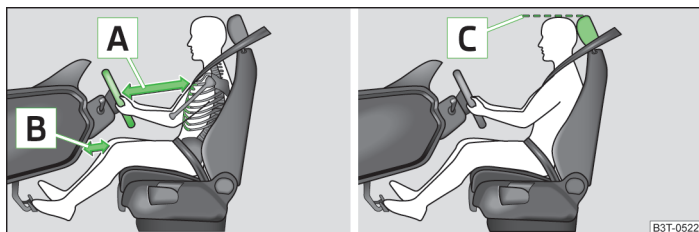


Fig. 158 Correct driver seating position / properly adjusted headrest

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 177.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting.

- Position the steering wheel so that there is a gap of at least 25 cm between the steering wheel and the chest » Fig. 158 , and that the distance between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag is at least 10 cm .
- Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
- Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.

¹⁾ Not valid for sport seats.

- Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head ¹⁾ .
- Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 180, *Using seat belts*.

Manual driver seat adjustment » page 72.

Electrical driver seat adjustment » page 73.

Correct seated position for the front passenger

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 177.

For the safety of the front passenger and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting.

- Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head ¹⁾ » Fig. 158 on page 178.
- Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 180.

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 190, *Deactivating airbags*.

Manual front passenger adjustment » page 72.

Electrical front passenger seat adjustment » page 73.

Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 177.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

- Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head » Fig. 158 on page 178.
- Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 180, *Using seat belts*.
- Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » page 193, *Transporting children safely*.

Examples of an incorrect seated position



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 177.

The maximum protection which seat belts can offer is only achieved if your seat-belts are fastened correctly.

Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and passengers, especially children. Never allow a passenger to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death. This list is not complete, however we would like you to familiarise yourself with this subject.

Observe the following instructions while driving.

- Do not stand up.
 - Do not stand on the seats.
 - Do not knee on the seats.
 - Do not tilt the seat backrest too much to the back.
 - Do not lean against the dash panel.
 - Do not lie on the rear seat bench.
 - Do not sit only on the front area of the seat.
 - Do not sit facing to the side.
 - Do not lean out of the window.
 - Do not put your feet out of the window.
 - Do not put your feet on the dash panel.
 - Do not put your feet on the seat upholstery.
 - Do not transport somebody in the footwell.
 - Do not drive without fastening the seat belt.
 - Do not remain in the luggage compartment.
- 

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction

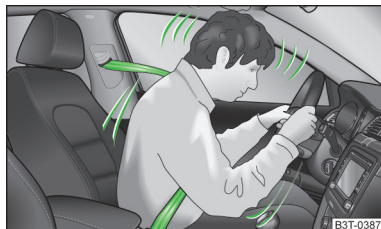


Fig. 159
Driver wearing seat belt

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The physical principle of a head-on collision	181
Fastening and unfastening seat belts	182
Belt height adjustment on the front seats	183

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Correctly fastened seat belts hold occupants of the car in the correct seated position » Fig. 159.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

The occupants of a vehicle who have fastened and correctly adjusted their seat belt profit to a major extent from the fact that the kinetic energy is as much as possible absorbed by the belts.

The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to reducing the kinetic energy in the best possible way. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » page 193.

WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey – even when driving in town! This also applies to the people seated at the rear – risk of injury!
- Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child » page 182, *Fastening and unfastening seat belts*.
- The maximum protection which seat belts can offer is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 177, *Correct seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions to ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed.

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder – on no account across your neck.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, keys, etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the seat belts is properly.

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

! WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the proper use of the seat belts.

- Never use one seat belt to secure two people (including children). The seat belt must not be placed over a child who is sitting on the lap of another passenger.
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- It is prohibited to use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e. g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » [page 78](#).

! WARNING

Observe the following instructions for proper use of the seat belts.

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » [page 211](#).
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the relevant seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced – this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

i Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when using seat belts.

The physical principle of a head-on collision

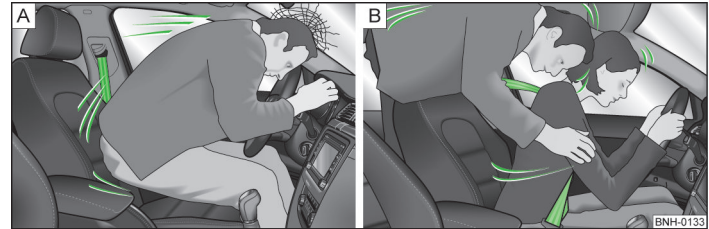


Fig. 160 Driver without a fastened seat belt/rear seat passenger without a fastened seat belt



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on [page 180](#).

As soon as the vehicle is moving, so-called kinetic energy (the energy of motion) is produced both in terms of the car as well as in terms of the occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle including the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident.

The speed of the vehicle is the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

The opinion that it is possible to support your body in a minor accident with your hands, is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed of 30 km/h to 50 km/h, the forces that your body is exposed to in the event of an accident can exceed a metric ton (1000 kg).

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg "increases" at 50 km/h to 4.8 tons (4800 kg).

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt are thrown forward and strike parts of the vehicle interior in an uncontrolled manner, such as the steering wheel, dash panel or windscreen » [Fig. 160 - A](#). In certain circumstances you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life threatening or even fatal injuries. ►

It is also important that rear seat occupants fasten their seat belts as they will otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident.

Rear seat passengers who have not fastened their seat belts are a danger not only to themselves but also to those seated at the front » Fig. 160 - [B].

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

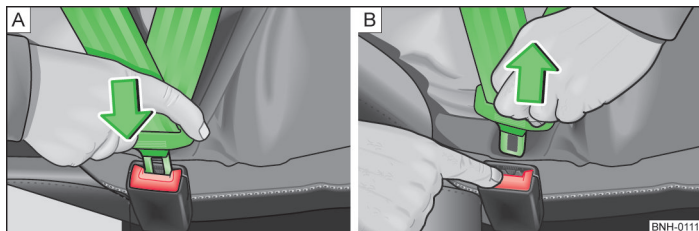


Fig. 161 Fastening/unfastening the seat belt

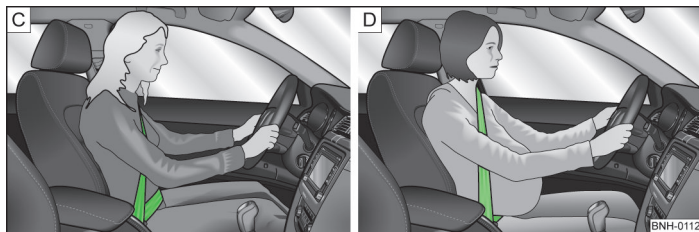


Fig. 162 Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings [A] on page 180.

Fasten

- Correctly adjust the front seat and head restraint¹⁾ before fastening the seat belt » page 177.
- Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.
- Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle for the seat » Fig. 161 - [A] until it audibly clicks into place.
- Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not be positioned across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 162 - [C].

Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

With pregnant women, the lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 162 - [D].

Release

Release the seat belt when the vehicle is stationary.

- Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 161 - [B]; the lock tongue pops out.
- Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing, the seat belt does not twist.



CAUTION

When releasing the seatbelt ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

¹⁾ Not valid for sport seats.

Belt height adjustment on the front seats

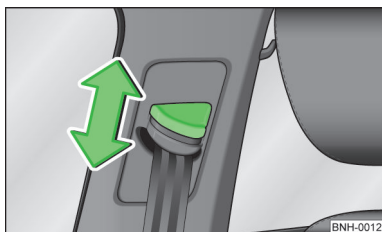


Fig. 163
Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 180.

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible to adjust the routing of the front seat belts in the area of the shoulder to the body size.

- Press the seat belt height adjuster and move up or down in the desired direction » Fig. 163.
- Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Inertia reel and belt pretensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reel	183
Belt tensioners	183

Intertia reel



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 183.

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel.

The belts also block when during full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.



WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 183.

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity. The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

The fastened three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal or side collision of a certain severity.

Belt tensioners are not activated in the event of minor frontal collisions, side and rear-end collisions, in the case of a rollover and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced from the front.



WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system, including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
 - When disposing of the vehicle or parts of the belt tensioner system, it is important to comply with national legal requirements. ŠKODA service partners are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information.
- 

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

System description _____ 185

Airbag deployment _____ 185

WARNING

- **An airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a fastened seat belt.**
- The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
- To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match the body size » [page 177](#), *Correct seated position*.
- If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.

WARNING

- Observe the following instructions for handling the airbag system.
- If there is a fault, the airbag system must be checked by a specialist garage immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
 - No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
 - Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
 - Never make any changes to the front bumper or bodywork.
 - It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
 - The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

System description



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 185.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the indicator light  in the instrument cluster » [page 19](#).

When the airbags are deployed they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

The airbag system consists – depending on the vehicle equipment – of the following modules.

- Electronic control unit.
- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » [page 187](#).
- Driver's knee airbag » [page 188](#).
- Side airbags » [page 188](#).
- Head airbags » [page 189](#).
- Airbag warning light in the instrument cluster » [page 19](#).
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » [page 191](#).
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag/activation in dash panel centre » [page 191](#).



Note

- The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.
- If you sell your vehicle, provide the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Please note that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!
- When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements.

Airbag deployment



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 185.

The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer that additional protection in the event of an accident.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

In certain accident situations, the several airbags may be deployed simultaneously.

The airbags **are not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear-end collisions, tilting of the vehicle and vehicle rollover.

Deployment factors

It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed, etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system.

If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.

- Driver's front airbag.
- Front passenger airbag.
- Driver's knee airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.

- Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Rear side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Head airbags on the side of the accident.

In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed:

- the interior lighting comes on (if the switch for the interior light is in the door contact position),
- the hazard warning light is switched on;
- all the doors are unlocked;
- the fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

Airbag overview

 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags	187
Driver's knee airbag	188
Side airbags	188
Head airbags	189 ■

Front airbags

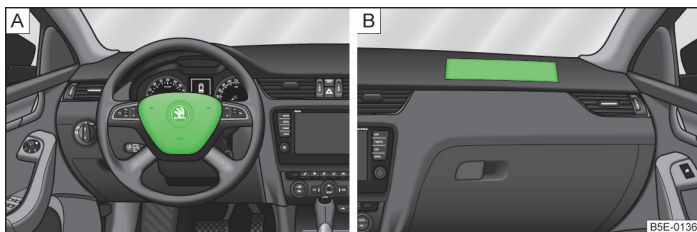


Fig. 164 Driver airbag in the steering wheel/front passenger airbag in the dash panel

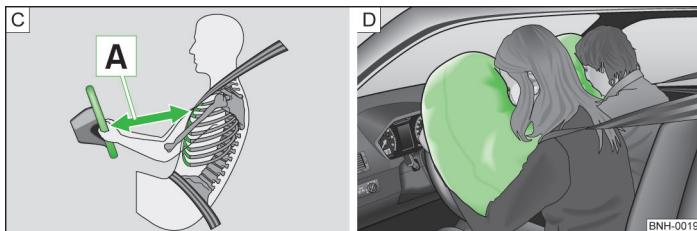


Fig. 165 Safe distance to steering wheel/inflated airbags



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 186.

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbag system offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The front airbag for the driver is located in the steering wheel » Fig. 164 - A.

The front airbag for the front seat passenger is located in the dash panel above the storage compartment » Fig. 164 - B.

When the airbags are deployed, they inflate in front of the driver and front passenger » Fig. 165 - B. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

! WARNING

Correct seated position

- It is important that the driver and front passenger maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel or dashboard A » Fig. 165. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

! WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children

- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 190, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, pay attention to any relevant national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

! WARNING

General

- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. must be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

Driver's knee airbag

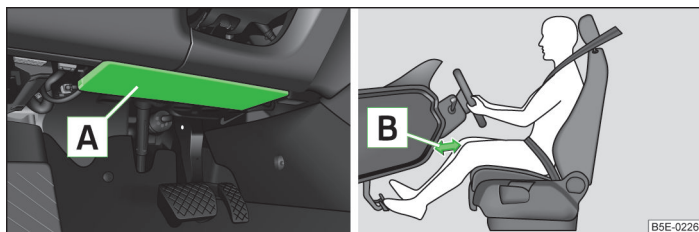


Fig. 166 Driver's knee airbag below the steering column



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 186.

The driver's knee airbag offers adequate protection for the driver's legs.

The driver's knee airbag **A** is located in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column » Fig. 166.

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the driver's knee airbag and front airbags are deployed.

The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the legs of the driver is thus reduced.

! WARNING

- Adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10cm between the legs **B** and the dash panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag » Fig. 166. If it is not possible to meet this requirement due to your body size, visit a specialist garage.
- The surface of the airbag module in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. This part should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects must be attached to the cover of the airbag module or located within the immediate vicinity.
- Do not attach any bulky and heavy objects (bunch of keys etc.) to the ignition key. These can be ejected by the knee airbag when it is deployed and can cause injuries.

Side airbags

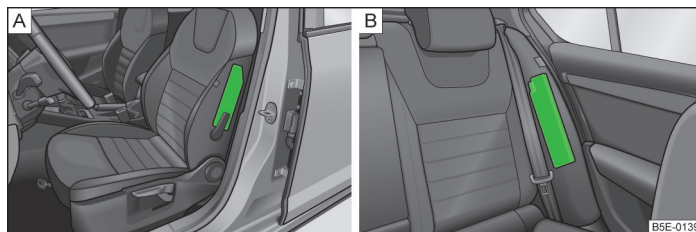


Fig. 167 Installation location of the side airbags front/rear

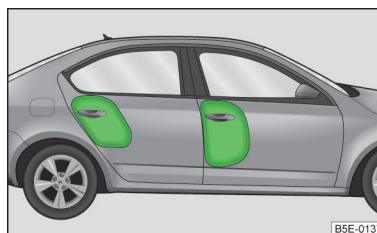


Fig. 168
Inflated side airbags



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 186.

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbag system provides additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The front side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats » Fig. 167 - **A**.

The rear side airbags are located between the entrance area and the seat backrest » Fig. 167- **B**.

When the side airbags » Fig. 168 are deployed, the head airbag and belt tensioner are also automatically deployed on the relevant side. ▶

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

! WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the proper seated position.

- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » [page 195](#), *Child safety and side airbag*.
- There must not be any further persons, animals as well as objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » [page 193](#), *Child seat*.

! WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.
- Always have work carried out by a ŠKODA service partner or a professional specialist garage.

! WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by a specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

Head airbags

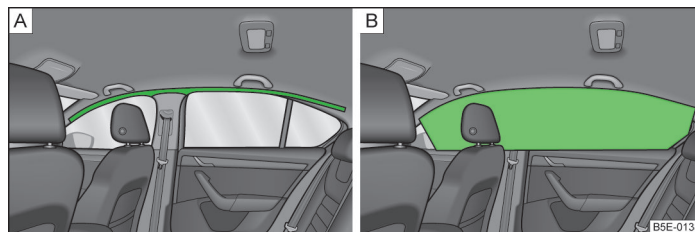


Fig. 169 Location of the head airbag/gas-filled head airbag



First read and observe the introductory information given on [page 186](#).

In the event of a severe side collision, the head airbag system offers additional protection for the head and neck area of passengers.

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides of the vehicle interior » [Fig. 169 - \[A\]](#).

In the event of a **side collision** the head airbag is deployed together with the relevant side airbag and the front seat belt tensioner on the side of the car on which the accident occurs.

When deployed, the airbag covers the window area of the front and rear doors, as well as the area of the door pillar » Fig. 169 - [B].

Head impact with interior parts is reduced by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area.

The head airbag also offers additional protection in the case of an offset impact by covering the front door pillar.

 **WARNING**

General

- There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. Additionally, clothes hangers must not be used to hang up items of clothing.
- The installation of impermissible accessories in the vicinity of the head airbags can considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the accessories fitted could, conditions permitting, be thrown into the interior of the car and injure the occupants » page 200.
- The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
- There must no other persons (e.g. children) or animals between the passenger and the deployment area of the head airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

 **WARNING**

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.
- Always have work carried out by a ŠKODA service partner or a professional specialist garage.

 **Note**

In vehicles with head airbags, the word AIRBAG can be seen on the B column cladding.

Deactivating airbags

 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags	191
Deactivating the front passenger airbag	191 ■

Deactivating airbags



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 190.

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones outlined below.

- If using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat (due to different legal regulations, the airbag must be deactivated if using a forward-facing child seat in some countries) » [page 193, Transporting children safely.](#)
- If not being able to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.
- If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
- If other seats have been installed (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » [page 191, Deactivating the front passenger airbag.](#)

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags as appropriate.

Monitoring the airbag system

The functionality of the airbag system is monitored electronically even if one of the airbags is switched off.

Airbag was switched off using diagnostic equipment

- The warning light lights up for approx. 4 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes again for approx. 12 seconds.

Front passenger airbag switched off with the key switch in the storage compartment

- The warning light comes on for about 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.
- The indicator light **OFF** **3** » [Fig. 170](#) on page 191 lights up after the ignition is switched on.

i Note

- The national regulations for switching off airbags must be observed.
- A ŠKODA service partner will be able to inform you which, if any, of your vehicle's airbags can or must be deactivated.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag



Fig. 170 Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag/warning light for front seat passenger airbag deactivation



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 190.

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.

Switching off

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position **2** » [Fig. 170 OFF.](#)
- Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Check that the **OFF** warning light in the **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON OFF** text **3** lights up after the ignition is switched on.

Switching on

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position **1** » [Fig. 170 ON.](#)
- Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Check that the **ON** warning light in the **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON OFF** text **3** lights up after the ignition is switched on.

The **ON** warning light goes out 65 seconds after the key switch status has changed or after the ignition is switched on.



WARNING

- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the **ON OFF** warning light is flashing, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in an accident. Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat	194
Child safety and side airbag	195
Classification of child seats	195
Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt	195

Children are generally safer on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.

In contrast to adults, the muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Thus children are exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported in accordance with the relevant statutory provisions.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard must be used. The ECE-R standard stands for: Economic Commission for Europe – Regulation.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard have a test seal that cannot be removed: a large E within a circle with the test number below.

WARNING

- The national legal requirements must be observed when using child seats.
 - One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
 - Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
 - The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire travelling time!
- Otherwise, in the event of an accident, the child would be thrown through the vehicle and as a result may suffer fatal injuries, and also injure other occupants.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the air-bag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel on the front passenger seat. Further information » [page 194](#), *Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat*.

CAUTION

- When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.
- If the head restraints still prevent the child seat from being installed, even in the highest position, you will need to remove them » [page 73](#). After removing the child seat, re-install the head restraints.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODAVehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag installed in front of it. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

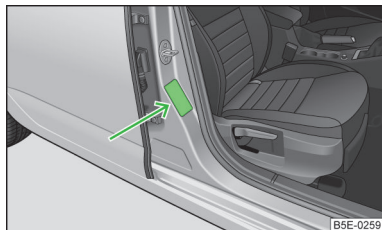
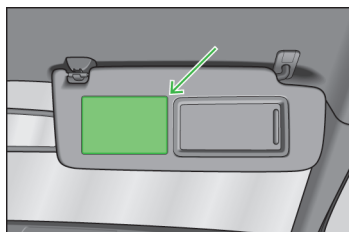


Fig. 171
Sticker on the B column on the front passenger side.



B5E-0260

Fig. 172 Front passenger sun visor / label

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 193.**

For safety reasons, we recommend that you install child seats on the rear seats whenever possible.

The following advice must be heeded when using a child seat in which the child is carried on the front passenger seat.

- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel » .
- If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.

- If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
- With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
- Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
- Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
- Place and fasten the child seat on the seat and the child in the child seat according to the specifications in the manufacturer's user manual of the child seat.

WARNING

- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel on the front passenger seat » [page 190, Deactivating airbags](#).
- **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- This fact is also indicated by the label that can be found in one of the following locations.
 - On the B-column on the front passenger side » [Fig. 171](#). The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door.
 - On the front passenger's sun visor. In some countries, the sticker is located on the front seat passenger's sun visor » [Fig. 172](#).
- With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
- Once the child seat, in which the child is transported with the back to the direction of travel, is no longer used in the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be switched on again.

Child safety and side airbag

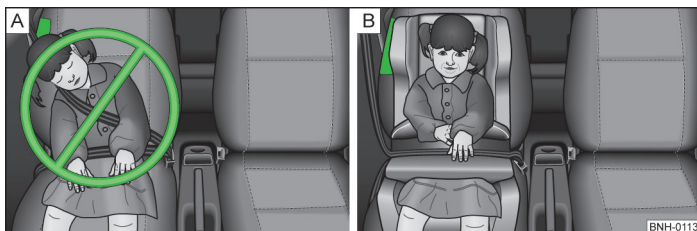


Fig. 173 Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 193.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 173 - [A].

There must be sufficient room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag to ensure that the airbag can provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 173 - [B].

WARNING

- Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbag – risk of injury!
- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags – risk of injury!

Classification of child seats

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 193.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child	Approximate age
0	up to 10 kg	up to 9 months
0+	up to 13 kg	up to 18 months
1	9-18 kg	up to 4 years
2	15-25 kg	up to 7 years
3	22-36 kg	over 7 years

Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 193.

Overview of the usefulness of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats external	Rear seat Centre
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U

U Child seat category "Universal" - a child seat designed for fastening on the seat with the seat belt.

Fastening elements

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

eyes belonging to the ISOFIX system	196
Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system	196
Locking eyes of the TOP TETHER system	197

eyes belonging to the ISOFIX system

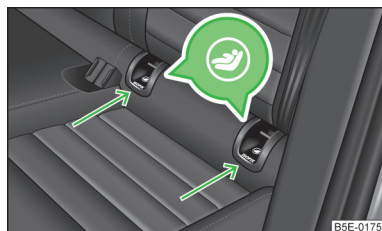


Fig. 174
Rear seat: ISOFIX



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 196.

There are two locking eyes between the seat backrest and the seat cushion of the outer rear seats and front passenger seat for fixing the ISOFIX system child seat in place » Fig. 174.

First remove the caps to access the locking eyes.

After removing the child seat, replace the caps.



WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the locking eyes intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system – risk of death!



Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle with the help of the ISOFIX system if the child seat in question has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 196.

Overview of the usefulness of child seats fastened with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat ^{a)}	Front passenger seat ^{b)}	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
0+ up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D			
	C			

Group	Size class of the child seat ^{a)}	Front passenger seat ^{b)}	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
1 9-18 kg	D	X	IL-SU IUF	X
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			

^{a)} The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

^{b)} If the front passenger seat is fitted with fixing eyes for the ISOFIX system, this suits installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval.

IL-SU The seat is suited for installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval. The category "Semi-Universal" means that the child seat with the ISOFIX system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the information in the list of vehicles which comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the approval "Universal" and attachment with the TOP TETHER belt.

X The seat is not fitted with fixing eyes for the ISOFIX system.

! WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the TOP TETHER system.
- Only use child seats with the TOP TETHER system on the seats with the locking eyes.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.
- On no account should you equip your vehicle, e.g. mount screws or other anchorage points.

Locking eyes of the TOP TETHER system

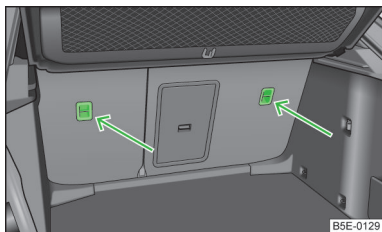


Fig. 175
Anchor eyelets on the TOP
TETHER system



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 196.

The anchor eyelets for attaching the belt for a child seat with the TOP TETHER system are located on the back of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 175.

General Maintenance

Vehicle care

Service intervals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview of service intervals	198
Fixed service intervals Q11 - Q14	199
Variable service interval Q16	199
Information about the ŠKODA service	199

The service interval display in the instrument cluster will remind you to carry out every service stipulated by the manufacturer at the right time in order to prevent you from forgetting any.

Timely and proper performance of servicing works is one of the requirements for the settlement of potential warranty claims.

The completion of services can be verified by the validated service certificate and the corresponding receipts.

The specified service intervals are tailored to normal operating conditions.

In the case of difficult operating conditions, it is necessary to have some service work performed before the date of the next service or between the specified service intervals. This applies mainly to the cleaning or the replacement of the air filter insert in regions with heavy dust pollution as well as checking and replacing the toothed belt, but also to vehicles with diesel particle filters, which can put greater strain on the engine oil.

These difficult conditions are:

- Fuel with sulphur content;
- Frequent short trips;
- Longer periods of engine idling (e.g. taxis);
- Operation in areas with heavy dust pollution;
- Frequent trailer operation;

- Predominantly stop-and-go traffic as is often the case in city driving, for example;
- Operation predominantly during winter.

A service consultant at the specialist garage will tell you whether the operating conditions of your vehicle may make it necessary for service work to be carried out between the normal service intervals.

Different service charges may apply from the particular scope of work required, depending on the vehicle type and equipment and the status of your vehicle.

Note

- The customer is responsible for covering the cost of all services including changing or replenishing the oil, even during the warranty period, unless stated otherwise in the ŠKODA AUTO a.s. warranty terms or other agreements.
- You will be informed about the current service scopes for the particular service work by the specialist garage.

Overview of service intervals

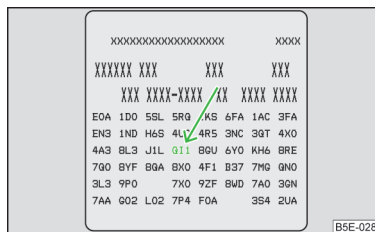


Fig. 176
Vehicle data sticker: Service interval



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 198.

The service interval specified by the manufacturer is indicated on the vehicle data sticker » Fig. 176 under the floor covering in the boot.

One of the following service intervals applies for your vehicle:

- Fixed service interval Q11;
- Fixed service interval Q12;
- Fixed service interval Q13;
- Fixed service interval Q14;
- Variable service interval Q16.

In order to operate a vehicle with a variable service interval, it must only be filled and topped up with the prescribed engine oil.

If this engine oil is not available, the oil change is subject to a fixed service interval. In this case, the vehicle **must** be changed to the fixed service interval.

Note

- The corresponding motor oil specifications » [page 219](#).
- A specialist garage can perform the changeover from the variable service interval to the fixed service interval, or from the fixed service interval to the variable service interval.

Fixed service intervals QI1 - QI4

 First read and observe the introductory information given on page 198.

Inspection	QI1 - QI4	After the first 30,000 km or 2 years ^{a)} , then every 30,000 km or every 1 year ^{a)} . Every 15,000 km or every 1 year ^{a)} (applies to Russia).
Oil change service	QI1	Every 5,000 km or every 1 year ^{a)} .
	QI2	Every 7,500 km or every 1 year ^{a)} .
	QI3	Every 10,000 km or every 1 year ^{a)} .
	QI4	Every 15,000 km or every 1 year ^{a)} .
Brake fluid change		First change after 3 years, then every 2 years

^{a)} (whichever comes first).

WARNING

The brake fluid must always be changed after the first 3 years and then every 2 years. Longer intervals between changing the brake fluid can cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system on sharp braking. This can impair the efficiency of the brakes – risk of accident!

Note

For diesel operation with a high sulphur content, the oil must be changed every 7500 km. Ask your specialist garage for information on the countries where diesel fuel has a high sulphur content.

Variable service interval QI6

 First read and observe the introductory information given on page 198.

The service intervals depend on the intensity at which the vehicle is driven and the local conditions in which the vehicle is used. For example, your vehicle is subjected to different loads when driven over short distances than when driven over long distances. The service intervals are therefore **variable**.

Inspection	After the first 30,000 km or 2 years ^{a)} , then every 30,000 km or every 1 year ^{a)} .
Oil change service	According to the service interval display (at the latest after 30,000 km or 2 years ^{a)}).
Brake fluid change	First change after 3 years, then every 2 years

^{a)} (whichever comes first).

WARNING

The brake fluid must always be changed after the first 3 years and then every 2 years. Longer intervals between changing the brake fluid can cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system on sharp braking. This can impair the efficiency of the brakes – risk of accident!

Information about the ŠKODA service

 First read and observe the introductory information given on page 198.

You have access to an extensive servicing network of ŠKODA Service Partners for the maintenance of your vehicle.

ŠKODA Service Partners feature modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Genuine Parts and ŠKODA Genuine Accessories at their disposal.

All ŠKODA Service Partners operate in accordance with the latest manufacturer guidelines and instructions. All service work is therefore carried out on time and in accordance with the quality standards. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

The ŠKODA Service Partners also offer a wide range of other services.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore recommend that you have your vehicle maintained by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Service work, adjustments and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Tests required by law	201
ŠKODA Service Partners	201
ŠKODA Genuine Parts	201
ŠKODA Genuine Accessories	202
Spoiler	202
Component protection	202
Airbags	203

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition. After carrying out modifications, repairs or technical alterations, the vehicle will comply with German road transport regulations (StVZO)

Always consult a ŠKODA Partner » [page 201](#) before buying accessories or parts, or before carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

WARNING

- If work on your vehicle is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.
- We recommend only having these modifications and technical alterations carried out by a specialist garage.
- Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. The operational safety of the vehicle may be at significant risk and can lead to increased wear of parts.
- The ŠKODA Partner accepts no liability for products that have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. even though these may be products with an operational approval or that have been approved by a government testing institute.

WARNING

- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from ŠKODA Partners, who will also perform the professional assembly of the purchased parts.

For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding changes carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user, in order to be handed over to the recyclers later. This ensures that vehicle recycling is in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

Any damage caused by technical alterations made without the approval of the manufacturer is excluded from the warranty.

Tests required by law



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⓘ on page 200.

Many countries have legislation requiring the operational reliability and roadworthiness and/or exhaust gas properties of a vehicle to be tested at specific intervals. These tests can be carried out by workshops or testing stations that have been legally authorized for this purpose.

The ŠKODA Service Partners are up-to-date on the legally required tests and will prepare the vehicle for the tests as part of a service operation if required, or will be responsible for carrying out these tests. The specialist garages can carry out the specified tests directly if required by the customer if they are authorised to do so. This saves you time and money.

Even if you want to take your vehicle to an officially approved test centre for prior checking in preparation of a legally required test, we recommend that you consult the service consultant of your ŠKODA Service Partner beforehand.

Based on their appraisal, the service consultant will tell you which areas you should focus on in order to ensure that your vehicle will pass the technical test without any problems. This allows you to avoid additional expenses resulting from a possible subsequent test.

ŠKODA Service Partners



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⓘ on page 200.

ŠKODA Service Partners feature modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have access to a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Original Parts and ŠKODA Original Accessories for carrying out modifications, repairs and technical alterations.

All ŠKODA service partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Genuine Parts



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⓘ on page 200.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s.. They correspond precisely to the ŠKODA AUTO a.s. regulations with regard to design, dimensional accuracy and material, and are identical to the components used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. is able to vouch for the safety, suitability and long service life of these products. We therefore recommend that you only use ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. supplies the market with a complete range of ŠKODA Genuine Parts - not only while the model is still in production but for at least 15 years after the end of series production for wear parts and at least 10 years after the end of series production for all other vehicle parts.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the invoices for these components for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term can be verified.

Body repairs

ŠKODA vehicles are designed such that if any damage occurs to the body, it is only necessary to replace those parts that are actually damaged.

However, before you decide to have damaged body parts replaced, you should first of all contact your specialist garage to determine whether or not the parts can also be repaired. Repairs to body parts are usually cheaper.

ŠKODA Genuine Accessories



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 200.

If you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle, you should remember the following:

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has selected these accessories to ensure that they are reliable, safe and suitable for your particular vehicle. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or vouch for other products even though in some instances such parts may have operational approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

All accessory products are subjected to a challenging process in the areas of technical development (technical testing) and quality inspection (customer testing), and the product only becomes a ŠKODA Genuine Accessory if all tests are passed.

Our ŠKODA Genuine Accessories service also includes expert advice and professional fitting if required by the customer.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the invoices for these accessories for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term can be verified.

ŠKODA Service Partners also stock a range of suitable car care products and all parts that are subject to natural wear-and-tear, such as tyres, batteries, bulbs and wiper blades.



Note

The accessories authorized by the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. will be offered by the ŠKODA Partners in all countries where the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has a sales and after-sales service network. This will usually be in the form of a printed catalogue of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories, in the form of separate printed brochures or in the form of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories on the ŠKODA Partner websites.

Spoiler



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 200.

If your new vehicle is fitted with a **spoiler** on the front bumper in combination with the **spoiler** on the luggage compartment lid, the following instructions must be adhered to.

- For safety reasons, the vehicle must only be fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the associated spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- This kind of spoiler cannot be left on the front bumper either on its own, in combination with another spoiler not on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.



WARNING

If work on your vehicle's spoilers is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.

Component protection



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 200.

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection.

The component protection was developed as a protection mechanism for:

- impairment of factory- or garage-fitted electronic components after installation in another vehicle (for example, after a theft);
- impairment of electronic components used outside the vehicle;
- the possibility of a legitimate installation or change of electronic components for repairs at a specialist garage.

The activated component protection can be realized by functional limitations of the specific electronic component. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Airbags



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 200.

The system components of the airbag system can be situated in the front bumper, doors, front seats, roof lining or body.

WARNING

Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system – risk of accident and fatal injury!
- The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed. Airbag modules cannot be repaired.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the airbag system.

- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
- Never install damaged airbag parts in the vehicle. The airbags may then not be triggered properly or not at all in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.

WARNING

- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tire combinations, can alter the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.



WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.

Washing your car



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Washing by hand	204
Automatic car wash systems	204
Washing with a high-pressure cleaner	204

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing.

How often the vehicle should be washed depends, for example, on the following factors.

- Frequency of use.
- Parking situation (garage, below trees, etc.).
- Season of the year.
- Weather conditions.
- Environmental influences.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

WARNING

- When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!
- Only wash the vehicle when the ignition is switched off – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight – risk of paint damage.



For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.

Washing by hand



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 203.

Soak the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as well as possible.

Clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or a **washing brush**. Work from the top to the bottom – starting with the roof.

Only use a **car shampoo** for stubborn dirt.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.



CAUTION

- When washing the car by hand, protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts (e.g. when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims, etc.) - There is a risk of cuts!
- Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork.

Automatic car wash systems



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 203.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the lips of the wipers should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.



WARNING

Fold in the exterior mirrors to prevent damage before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system. Never manually fold in electric exterior mirrors - always use the electric controls.

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 203.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

WARNING

Never use circular spray nozzles or dirt cutters!

CAUTION

- If washing the vehicle in the winter using a hose or high-pressure cleaner, ensure that the jet of water is not aimed directly at the locking cylinders or the door/panel joints – risk of freezing!
- To avoid damaging the parking aid sensors while cleaning with high-pressure cleaners or steam jets, the sensors must only be directly sprayed for short periods while a minimum distance of 10 cm must be observed.
- The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60 °C – risk of damaging the vehicle.
- See also Washing cars with decorative films using a high-pressure cleaner » [page 206](#).

Taking care of your vehicle exterior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Taking care of your vehicle's paintwork	205
Plastic parts	206
Rubber seals	206
Chrome parts	206
Decorative films	206
De-icing windows and exterior mirrors	207
Headlight lenses	207
Door lock cylinders	207
Cavity protection	208
Wheels	208
Underbody protection	208

Regular and proper care help to retain the efficiency and **value** of your vehicle. It may also be one of the requirements for the acceptance of warranty claims relating to corrosion damage and paint defects on the bodywork.

We recommend using care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories that are available from ŠKODA Partners. The instructions for use on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always store vehicle care products safely, in particular out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.



For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.



Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of your vehicle's exterior, we recommend that the cleaning and care of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Taking care of your vehicle's paintwork



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on [page 205](#).

Minor paint damage such as scratches, scuffs or stone chips should be treated immediately if possible, using **touch-up pens** or **sprays**.

Preserving the vehicle paintwork

Thorough wax treatment is an effective way of protecting the paintwork from harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly.

Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Polishing

Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.

! CAUTION

- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
- Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- If possible, do not apply any paint care products to parts of the bodywork that come into contact with door seals or window guides.

Plastic parts



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 205.

Clean plastic parts with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the plastic parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

! CAUTION

Do not use paint care products on plastic parts.

Rubber seals



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 205.

All door seals and window guides are factory-treated with a colourless matt varnish layer to prevent the freezing of painted body parts and to protect against driving noise.

Do not treat the door seals and window guides with **any** products.

! CAUTION

Applying additional treatments to the seals can corrode the protective coating, and driving noise may occur.

Chrome parts



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 205.

First clean the chrome parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth.

If this method does not completely clean chrome parts, use a specific chrome care product.

! CAUTION

Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.

Decorative films



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 205.

Wash the films with a mild soap solution and clean, warm water. Never use harsh cleaning products or chemical solvents, as this could damage the films.

The following instructions must be followed when washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner:

- The minimum distance between the nozzle and the vehicle body should be 50 cm.
- Keep jet perpendicular to the film surface.
- The maximum water temperature is 50 °C.
- The maximum water pressure is 80 bar.

! CAUTION

In the winter months, do not use an ice scraper to remove ice and snow from the areas with films. Do not use any other objects to remove frozen layers of snow or ice – risk of film damage.

De-icing windows and exterior mirrors

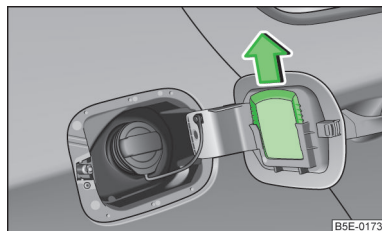


Fig. 177
Fuel filler flap: Ice scraper

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 205.

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors.

The ice scraper can be found on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

- Open the fuel filler flap.
- Slide out the ice scraper in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 177.

Regularly clean windows from the inside with clean water.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can dirty the window and reduce visibility.

! CAUTION

- The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.
- Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand or salt must not be removed from the windows and mirrors – there is a risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.
- Do not remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water – risk of cracks forming in the glass.
- When removing snow or ice from windows and mirror lenses ensure that the paintwork of the vehicle is not damaged.
- Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents – there is a risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.

Headlight lenses

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 205.

Clean plastic front headlight lenses using clean, warm water and soap.

! CAUTION

- **Never** wipe headlights to dry.
- Do not use any sharp objects to clean the plastic lenses, as this may damage the protective paintwork and consequently cause cracks to form on the headlight lenses.
- Do not use any harsh cleaning products or chemical solvents to clean the headlights, as this could damage the headlight lenses.

Door lock cylinders

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 205.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

! CAUTION

When washing your vehicle, ensure as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinders.

Cavity protection



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 205.

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

Wax protection does not require to be inspected or re-treated.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

! WARNING

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax – risk of fire!

Wheels



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 205.

Wheel rims

Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis.

Regularly remove salt and brake abrasion, otherwise the rim material will be corroded.

Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.

Light alloy wheels

After washing thoroughly and treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels. Products which cause abrasion must not be used to treat the wheel rims.

! CAUTION

Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.

Underbody protection



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 205.

The underside of your vehicle is protected for life against chemical and mechanical influences.

It is not possible to guarantee that the **protective coating** will not suffer any damage as the vehicle is driven.

We recommend having the protective coating underneath the vehicle and the chassis checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

! WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filters or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances might ignite - risk of fire!

Taking care of the interior



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Natural leather	209
Artificial leather, cloths and Alcantara®	210
Seat covers	210
Seat belts	211 ►

Regular and proper care helps to ensure efficiency and to **maintain the value** of your vehicle.

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always store vehicle care products safely, in particular out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!

CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colourfastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to health when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.
- Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dash panel – there is a risk of damage to the dash panel.
- Do not stick any stickers on the inside of the rear windows, the rear side windows and in the vicinity of the heating elements on the windscreen or near the window aerial. These may get damaged.
- Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
- Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA service partner.

Natural leather



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 208.

Leather is a natural material with specific properties, and requires regular cleaning and maintenance.

Depending on the amount of wear-and-tear, the leather should be cleaned on a regular basis.

Dust and dirt in the pores and folds act as abrasive materials. This leads to severe corrosion and the premature brittleness of the leather surface.

We recommend that you remove dust **regularly and at short intervals** using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean soiled leather surfaces with a water-dampened cotton or woollen cloth and then dry with a clean, dry cloth » .

Clean **severely soiled areas** with a cloth soaked in a mild soap solution (2 table-spoons of neutral soap to 1 litre of water).

To **remove stains**, use a cleaning agent specially designed for this purpose.

Treat the leather regularly and at suitable intervals using a suitable leather care product.

CAUTION

- Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams. Otherwise, the leather could become brittle or cracked.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid the leather from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.

- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts, jewellery and pendants may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface. Such damage cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.
- The use of a mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.
- Use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation effect on a regular basis and each time after cleaning. The cream nourishes the leather, allows it to breathe and keeps it supple and also provides moisture. It also creates surface protection.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Note

During the use of the vehicle, minor visible changes can occur on the leather parts of the covers (e. g. wrinkles or creases as a result of the stress of the covers).

Artificial leather, cloths and Alcantara®

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 208.

Artificial leather

Clean artificial leather with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the artificial leather, use a mild soap solution or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Fabric

Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, luggage compartment cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam.

Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth.

Use a cloth and a cleaning agent specifically designed for this purpose to clean the roof trim.

Remove any lumps on the cover fabric and any fabric residue using a brush.

Remove stubborn hair using a "cleaning glove".

Alcantara®

Dust and fine dirt particles in pores, creases and seams may chafe and damage the surface.

If you leave your vehicle parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the Alcantara® seat covers from the direct rays of the sun to prevent fading.

Minor changes in colour caused by use are normal.

CAUTION

- Do not use any leather cleaners on Alcantara® seat covers.
- For Alcantara® seat covers do not use any solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover, or similar agents.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle in bright sunlight for long periods of time in order to stop the fabric from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked outside for long periods of time, cover the fabric to protect it from direct sunlight.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Seat covers

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 208.

Electrically heated seats

Do not clean the covers by **moistening**, as this can damage the seat heating system.

Use a specific cleaning agent such as dry foam or similar to clean the covers.

Seats without seat heating

Thoroughly vacuum the seat covers with a vacuum cleaner before cleaning.

Clean the seat covers with a damp cloth or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Indented points arising on the fabrics by everyday use, can be removed by brushing against the direction of hair with a damp brush.

Always clean all parts of the covers, so that there are no visible edges. Then allow the seat to dry completely. ▶

CAUTION

- Regularly remove dust from the seat covers using a vacuum cleaner.
- Electrically heated seats must not be dried after cleaning by switching on the heater.
- Do not sit on wet seats - risk of seat deformation.
- Always clean the seats from "seam to seam".

Seat belts



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 208.

The belt webbing must always be kept clean.

Wash dirty seat belts with mild soapy water.

Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush.

Dirty belt webbing may impair the correct functioning of the inertia reel.

WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- The seat belts must not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (e.g. acids).
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the belt webbing, seat belt connections, inertia reel or lock is detected, the seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- The seat belts must be fully dried before being rolled up.

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Refuelling	212
Unleaded petrol	213
Diesel fuel	214

The correct grades of fuel for your vehicle are stated on a sticker affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 178 on page 212 - [B].

! WARNING

The national legal requirements must be observed if carrying a spare canister in the vehicle. We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. In the event of an accident this can get damaged and fuel may escape – risk of fire!

! CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage!
- If the vehicle was not purchased in the country where it was intended to be operated, you should check whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in the country where the vehicle will be operated. You should also perhaps check whether the manufacturer has recommended a different fuel for operation of the vehicle in the corresponding country. Is this not the case, then you must check whether it is permitted by the manufacturer to operate the vehicle with another fuel type.

Refuelling

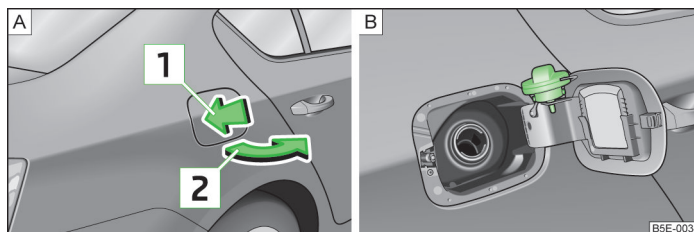


Fig. 178 Open fuel filler flap/fuel filler flap with cap unscrewed

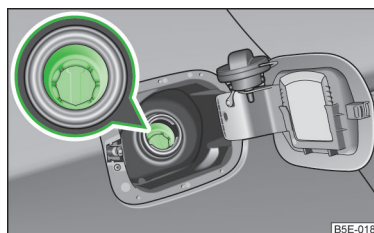


Fig. 179 Fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 212.

Before refuelling, switch off the auxiliary heating system (auxiliary heating and ventilation) » page 116.

- Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow [1] » Fig. 178 - [A].
- Open the flap manually in the direction of the arrow [2].
- Turn the filler cap counterclockwise.
- Remove the filler cap and place it into the hole on the fuel filler flap » Fig. 178 - [B].
- Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler tube as far as it will go.

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time » [!].

- Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler tube and put it back in the pump. ▶

- Place the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and turn it clockwise until it securely engages.
- Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Check that the fuel filler flap is closed properly.

Incorrect refuelling guard on vehicles with diesel engines

The fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines has been fitted with an incorrect refuelling guard » Fig. 179. This guard means it is only possible to refuel with the diesel pump nozzle.

If the diesel pump nozzle does not sit directly in the fuel filler tube, move it to and fro with slight pressure to insert it correctly.

CAUTION

- The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Do not continue filling the fuel tank otherwise the expansion volume is filled up.
- Be careful when filling diesel fuel from the spare canister – danger of contaminating the body.
- The diameter of the diesel pump nozzle can be identical to that of the petrol pump nozzle in some countries. When driving in these countries, the incorrect fuelling protection should be removed by a specialist company.

Note

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **50 litres**, containing a reserve of approx. **7 litres**.

Unleaded petrol



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 212.

Your vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** in compliance with the **EN 228¹⁾** standard.

All petrol engines can be operated using petrol that contains at **most 10% bioethanol (E10)**.

Required fuel - unleaded petrol 95/91 or 92 or 93 RON

Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95 RON**. Unleaded petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92 or 93 RON** can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance.

Prescribed fuel - unleaded petrol min. 95 RON

Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95 RON** or higher.

In case of necessity, you can refuel with petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92 or 93 RON**, if petrol with the octane rating **95 RON** is not available » .

Prescribed fuel - unleaded petrol 98/(95) RON

Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **98 RON** or higher. Unleaded petrol **95 RON** can also be used but results in a slight loss in performance.

In case of necessity, you can refuel with petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92 or 93 RON**, if unleaded fuel with octane rating **98 RON** or **95 RON** is not available » .

Fuel additives

Unleaded petrol in accordance with the EN 228 standard¹⁾ meets all the conditions for a smooth-running engine. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

CAUTION

- Even filling the tank with leaded petrol that does not meet the standards once can lead to serious damage to parts of the exhaust system!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is used by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur! We recommend that you have the fuel system cleaned by a specialist garage.

¹⁾ In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.

! CAUTION

- If, in an emergency, the vehicle has to be refuelled with petrol of a lower octane number than the one prescribed, the journey must only be continued at medium engine speeds and a low engine load. Driving at high engine revs or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- Engine parts can be damaged if petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used.
- Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91 RON** must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

! CAUTION

- In no case may fuel additives with metal components be used, especially not with manganese and iron content. **LRP** (lead replacement petrol) fuels with metallic components may not be used. There is a risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!
- Fuels with metallic content may not be used. There is a risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!

i Note

- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **95/91, 92 or 93 RON**, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95 RON** does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.
- On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95 RON**, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95 RON** can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Diesel fuel



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 212.

Your vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel** that meets the **EN 590**¹⁾ standard.

All diesel engines can be operated using diesel fuel with at **most 7% biodiesel (B7)**²⁾.

On the Indian market, your vehicle will only be able to run on **diesel fuel** compliant with standard **IS 1460/Bharat IV**. If diesel fuel which complies with this standard is not available, you can refuel with diesel fuel according to standard **IS 1460/Bharat III** in case of emergency.

Operation in winter - Winter-grade diesel fuel

In the cold season, only use "winter-grade diesel fuel" which will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. The ŠKODA Partners and filling stations in the relevant country will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

Preheating fuel

The vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter preheating system. This secures operation of a vehicle using diesel fuel down to an environmental temperature of -24 °C.

Diesel fuel additives

Additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar agents) should not be mixed with the diesel fuel. This can cause serious damage to engine or exhaust system parts.

¹⁾ In Germany also DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590:2004.

²⁾ In Germany according to the DIN 52638 standard, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590.

! CAUTION

- Just filling the tank once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard, can cause severe damage to parts of the engine, the fuel and exhaust system!
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is used by mistake do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur! We recommend that you have the fuel system cleaned by a specialist garage.
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.

! CAUTION

- Your vehicle cannot be operated with biofuel **RME**, therefore this fuel must not be refuelled and driven. The use of biofuel **RME** can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or fuel system.
- Do not mix any fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar agents) into the diesel. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

Engine compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening and closing the bonnet	217
Engine compartment overview	218
Radiator fan	218
Windscreen washer system	218

! WARNING

When working in the engine compartment, injuries, scolding, accident or fire hazards may arise. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions stated below and with the general applicable rules of safety. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

! WARNING

Before beginning work in the engine compartment, please read the following advice.

- Turn off the engine and withdraw the ignition key.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a manual gearbox, move the gearshift lever into Neutral, or if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox, move the selector lever into position P.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant flowing out of the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.

! WARNING

While working in the engine compartment, please read the following advice.

- Keep children clear of the engine compartment.
- Never touch the radiator fan while the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!
- The coolant additive and thus all of the coolant is harmful to your health.
- Avoid contact with the coolant.
- Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!
- When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
- Always safely store the coolant additive in its original container out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!
- If coolant is swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cloths or tools) in the engine compartment.
- Never spill fluids on the hot engine. Such fluids (e.g. the antifreeze contained in the coolant) may ignite!

WARNING

The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment while the engine is running.

- Pay particular attention to moving engine parts (e.g. V-ribbed belt, alternator, radiator fan) and the high-voltage ignition unit – risk of death!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system – particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts – risk of death! Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

WARNING

The following warning instructions must be observed if work has to be carried out on the fuel or electrical systems.

- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
- Do not smoke.
- Never work near open flames.
- Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.

WARNING

- Read the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.
- Keep fluids in their original containers and keep out of reach of children!
- If you wish to work under the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks: the car jack is not sufficient for this – risk of injury!
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a blanket) – risk of fire!
- The bonnet must always be properly closed when driving. This is why after closing the bonnet, the lock must always be checked to ensure it has engaged properly.
- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!



For the sake of the environment

In view of the requirements for the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids and the special tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids be changed by a specialist garage.



Note

- Please consult a specialist garage for any questions relating to fluids.
- Fluids with the correct specifications can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Opening and closing the bonnet



Fig. 180 Bonnet release lever/release lever

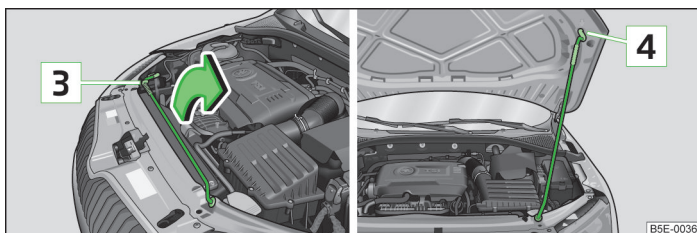


Fig. 181 Securing the bonnet

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 215.

When the front door is closed, the bonnet cannot be unlocked with lever

1 » Fig. 180.

Opening

- » Open the front door.
- » Pull the release lever underneath the dash panel in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 180.

Before opening the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen otherwise the paintwork could be damaged.

- » Press the release lever in the direction of the arrow 2 and the bonnet is unlocked.
- » Grab hold of the bonnet and lift.
- » Take the bonnet support out of its holder 3 » Fig. 181 in the direction of the arrow and secure the opened bonnet by inserting the end of the support into the opening 4.

Closing

- » Lift the bonnet slightly and unhook the bonnet support. Insert the bonnet support into the holder 3 designed to hold it.
- » Let the bonnet drop into the lock carrier lock from a height of around 20 cm – do not push it in!



WARNING

Check whether the bonnet has been closed properly. Also make sure a vehicle with an **opened** bonnet does not appear in the instrument cluster display » page 28.



CAUTION

Never open the bonnet using the release lever » Fig. 180.

Engine compartment overview

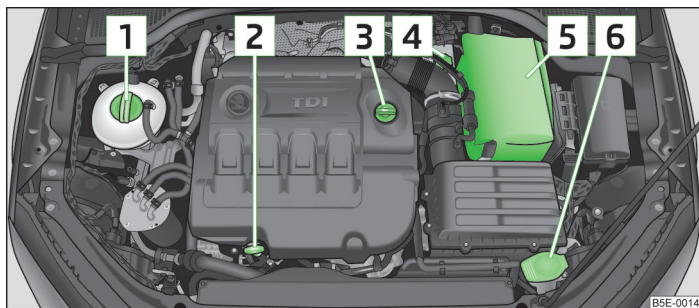


Fig. 182 Principle sketch: Engine compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 215.

- | | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|-----|
| | Coolant expansion reservoir | 222 |
| | Engine oil dipstick | 220 |
| | Engine oil filler opening | 221 |
| | Brake fluid reservoir | 223 |
| | Battery (below a cover) | 224 |
| | Windscreen washer fluid reservoir | 218 |

Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical.

Radiator fan

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 215.

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

WARNING

After switching off the ignition, the fan can intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Windscreen washer system

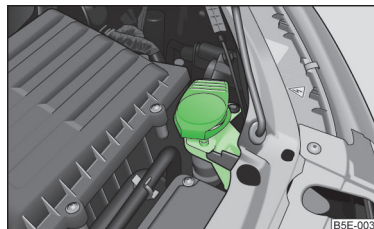


Fig. 183
Engine compartment: Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 215.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment and contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen or rear window and for the headlights.

The **capacity** of the reservoir is about 3 litres or about 4.7 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system.

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend using clean washing water together with the screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories (**in winter additionally with antifreeze**) which is capable of removing stubborn dirt.

In Winter, the washing water should always be mixed with antifreeze even if the vehicle has heated windscreen washer nozzles.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C.

! CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator antifreeze or other additives be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, only cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights must be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when replenishing it with liquid otherwise the liquid transportation system can be contaminated, which can cause the windscreen washer system to malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Specifications and capacity	219
Checking the oil level	220
Replenishing	221
Changing	221

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be used throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

The engine oils are undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

ŠKODA Service Partners are informed about the latest changes by the manufacturer. We therefore recommend that the oil change be completed by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

The oil capacities include oil filter change. Check the oil level when filling; do not over fill. The oil level must be between the markings » [page 220](#).

! WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » [page 215](#).
- Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the oil level is above level **A** » [Fig. 184](#) on [page 220](#), do not continue to drive! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

! CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil - risk of serious damage to the engine parts!

i Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- If your skin has come into contact with oil, it must be washed thoroughly.

Specifications and capacity



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on [page 219](#).

Specifications and capacity (in l) for vehicles with flexible service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification	Filling level
1.2 l/63, 77 kW TSI	VW 504 00	4.0
1.4 litres/103 kW TSI		
1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI		5.2
2.0 ltr./162 kW TSI		5.7
Diesel engines	Specification	Filling level
1.6 l/66, 77, 81 kW TDI	VW 507 00 ^{a)}	4.6
2.0 l/110, 135 kW TDI CR		

^{a)} Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines without a DPF.

Specifications and capacity (in l) for vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification	Filling level
1.2 l/63, 77 kW TSI	VW 502 00	4.0
1.4 litres/103 kW TSI		
1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI		5.2
2.0 ltr./162 kW TSI		5.7
Diesel engines	Specification	Filling level
1.6 l/66, 77, 81 kW TDI	VW 507 00 ^{a)}	4.6
2.0 l/105, 110, 135 kW TDI		

^{a)} Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines without a DPF.

! CAUTION

■ If the above engine oils are not available, a different engine oil can be used in an emergency. To prevent damage to the engine, a **max. 0.5 l** only of the following engine oils may be used until the next oil change:

- For petrol engine models: ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN/API SM;
- For diesel engine models: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Checking the oil level

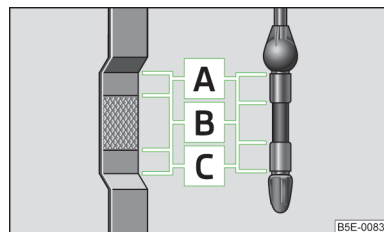


Fig. 184
Dipstick



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 219.

The dipstick indicates the engine oil level » Fig. 184.

Checking the oil level

Ensure that the vehicle is positioned on a level surface and the engine has reached its operating temperature.

➤ Switch off the engine.

Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil trough.

➤ Open the bonnet.

➤ Pull out the dipstick.

➤ Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.

➤ Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.

Oil level within range **A**

No oil must be refilled.

Oil level within range **B**

Oil **can** be refilled. Afterwards, the oil level can lie in the range **A**.

Oil level within range **C**

Oil **must** be replenished if the oil level is in the range **B** or lower.

The engine consumes a little oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/1000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5000 kilometres.

The oil level must be checked at regular intervals. We recommend after each time you refuel or prior to making a long journey.

We recommend maintaining the oil level within the range **A**, **but not above**, if the engine has been operating at high loads, for example, during a lengthy motorway trip during the summer months, towing a trailer or negotiating a high mountain pass.

The warning icon  is displayed in the instrument cluster if the oil level is too low » page 23. Check the oil level using the dipstick as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly.

! CAUTION

The oil level must not exceed level **A** » Fig. 184 - risk of damaging the exhaust system!

Replenishing



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 219.

- Check the oil level » page 220.
- Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening » Fig. 182 on page 218.
- Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » page 219.
- Check the oil level » page 220.
- Carefully screw on the oil filler opening cap and push the dipstick in fully.

Changing



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 219.

The engine oil must be changed according to prescribed service intervals » page 198 or according to the service interval display » page 33.

Coolant



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Capacity	222
Checking the coolant level	222
Replenishing	222

The coolant consists of water with a concentration of coolant additive. This mixture guarantees antifreeze protection, protects the cooling/heater system against corrosion and prevents the formation of scale.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **mild climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -25 °C. In these countries the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 40 %.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **cold climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -35 °C. In these countries the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 50 %.

If a higher concentration of antifreeze is required for climatic reasons, the amount of coolant additive can only be increased up to a maximum of 60 % (antifreeze protection down to approx. -40 °C).

When refilling, only use antifreeze with the name specified on the coolant expansion tank » Fig. 185 on page 222.



WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » page 215.
-  Do not continue your journey, if for some reason it is not possible to top up the coolant under the prevailing conditions! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.



CAUTION

- The amount of coolant additive in the coolant must never be allowed to be less than 40 %.
- Over 60 % of coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and coolant effectiveness.
- A coolant additive that does not comply with the correct specifications can significantly reduce the corrosion protection.
- Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage!
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark  » Fig. 185 on page 222.
- If a fault causes the engine to overheat, we recommend visiting a specialist garage, as otherwise serious engine damage may occur.

Capacity



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 221.

Coolant capacity (in litres)¹⁾

Petrol engines	Filling level
1.2 l/63, 77 kW TSI	8.9
1.4 litres/103 kW TSI	10.2
1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI	7.8
2.0 ltr./162 kW TSI	8.6

Diesel engines	Filling level
1.6 l/66, 77, 81 kW TDI CR	8.4
2.0 l/105, 110, 135 kW TDI CR - MG / DSG	11.6 / 11.9

Checking the coolant level

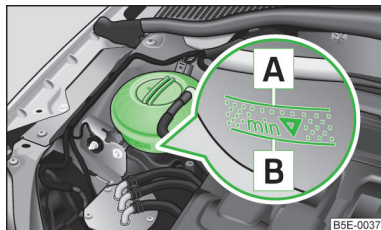


Fig. 185
Engine compartment: Coolant expansion reservoir



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 221.

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment.

Inspecting the coolant level

- Switch off the engine.
- Open the bonnet.

- Check the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank » Fig. 185.

Coolant level above mark **A**

No coolant must be refilled.

The level may also rise slightly above the **A** marking when the engine is warm.

Coolant level between markings **A** and **B**

Coolant can be refilled.

When the engine is cold, the coolant level must lie between the **A** and **B** markings.

Coolant level below mark **B**

Coolant **must** be refilled.

When the engine is cold, refill the coolant between the markings **A** and **B**.

If the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank is too low, this is indicated by the warning icon  lighting up in the instrument cluster » page 22,  *Coolant*. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Loss of coolant

A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a specialist garage.

Replenishing



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 221.

Only refill with new coolant.

- Switch off the engine.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion reservoir and unscrew the cap **carefully**.
- Replenish the coolant.
- Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

¹⁾ On vehicles that are fitted with an auxiliary heater (auxiliary heating and ventilation), the coolant capacity is approx. 1 l larger.

Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available in an emergency. In this case, use just water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive restored by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Brake fluid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking the brake fluid level _____ 223

Changing _____ 223

! WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » [page 215](#).
- If the fluid level has dropped below the MIN marking » [Fig. 186](#) on [page 223](#),
⚠ do not continue your journey - risk of accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- Do not use used brake fluid - the function of the brake system may be impaired - risk of accident!

! CAUTION

Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

i Note

The brake fluid is changed as part of a prescribed inspection services.

Checking the brake fluid level

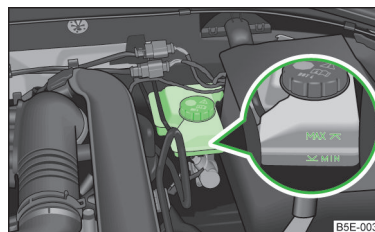


Fig. 186
Engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on [page 223](#).

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

- Switch off the engine.
- Open the bonnet.
- Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir » [Fig. 186](#).

The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results when driving due to normal wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking.

If the brake fluid level is too low, this is indicated by the indicator light **(i)** » [page 16](#), **(i)** *Brake system* lighting up in the instrument cluster.

Changing



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on [page 223](#).

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. Over time it therefore absorbs moisture from the environment.

Excessive water in the brake fluid may be the cause of corrosion in the brake system.

The water content lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid.

The brake fluid must comply with the following standards or specifications:

- > VW 50114;
- > FMVSS 116 DOT4.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening the cover	225
Checking the battery electrolyte level	226
Charging	226
Replacing	227
Disconnecting and reconnecting	227
Automatic load deactivation	227

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection!
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection!
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery!
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced!
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery!

WARNING

There is a risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when carrying out any work on the battery and on the electrical system. The general applicable safety rules and the following warnings must be observed without exception.

- Keep children away from the vehicle battery.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect your eyes by safety glasses or a face shield – risk of blindness!
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and creates deep wounds after contact with the skin which take a long time to heal. Repeated contact with diluted acids causes skin diseases (inflammations, ulcers, skin cracks).
- If any battery electrolyte comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the relevant eye immediately with clear water for several minutes - consult a doctor immediately!
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water. If you swallow battery acid, seek immediate medical assistance!

WARNING

- It is prohibited to work with a naked flame and light.
- Smoking or to carrying out any activities which produce sparks are prohibited.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery – risk of explosion!
- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery – risk of explosion and caustic burns!
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.

! WARNING

- When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparking over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- Creating a bridge between the poles on the battery (e.g. with a metal object or cable) creates a short circuit - risk of melting the lead bars, and risk of explosion, battery fire and acid splashes.
- Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
- Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all electrical components and disconnect the negative terminal (-) on the battery.

! CAUTION

Improper handling of the battery can lead to damage occurring. We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.

! CAUTION

- The vehicle battery must only be disconnected if the ignition is switched off, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system (electronic components) can be damaged. When disconnecting the battery from the electrical system, first of all disconnect the negative terminal (-) of the battery, followed by the positive terminal (+).
- When connecting the battery to the electrical system, first of all connect the positive terminal (+) of the battery, followed by the negative terminal (-). Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly - risk of a cable fire.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork - risk of damage to the paintwork.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.
- If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge. This is because certain electrical components consume electricity (e. g. control units) also in idle state. Prevent the battery from discharging by disconnecting the battery's negative terminal (-) or continuously charging the battery with a very low charging current.
- If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.



For the sake of the environment

A vehicle battery that has been removed is a special type of hazardous waste. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.



Note

You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Opening the cover

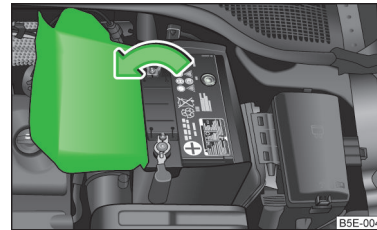


Fig. 187
Engine compartment: Polyester cover of vehicle battery



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 224.

The battery is located in the engine compartment - in some models, underneath a polyester cover » Fig. 187.

➤ Fold out the cover on the battery in the direction of the arrow.

The battery cover is installed in reverse order.

The edge of the polyester battery cover is inserted between the battery and the side wall of the battery cover when working on the battery.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

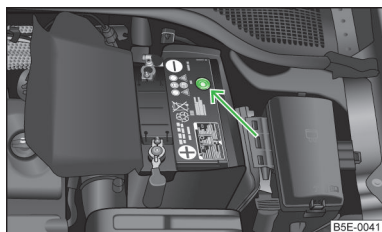


Fig. 188
Vehicle battery: Electrolyte level indicator



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 224.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator, the so-called magic eye » Fig. 188, the electrolyte level can be determined by looking at the change in colour.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.

- Black colour – electrolyte level is correct.
- Colourless or light yellow colour – electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Vehicles with a START-STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for the recurring engine start.

We recommend that you have the acid level checked regularly by a specialist garage, especially in the following cases.

- High external temperatures.
- Longer day trips.
- After each charge.

Winter time

The vehicle battery only has a proportion of the starting power in lower temperatures. A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C.

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked and, if necessary, recharged by a specialist garage before the start of the winter.



CAUTION

For technical reasons, on vehicles with the description "AGM", the electrolyte level cannot be checked.



Note

The battery acid level is also checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.

Charging



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 224.

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

- Switch off the ignition and all of the electrical components.
- Only when performing a "quick-charge", disconnect both battery cables (first of all "negative", then "positive").
- Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
- Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
- After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
- Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
- Reconnect the cables to the battery (first of all "positive", then "negative").

It is not necessary to disconnect the cables of the battery if you recharge the vehicle battery using low amperages (for example from a mini-charger). **Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer.**

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

It is necessary to disconnect both cables before charging the battery with high amperages, so-called "quick-charging".

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging.

! WARNING

"Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge.

! CAUTION

On vehicles with the START/STOP system, the pole terminal of the charger must not be connected directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth » [page 244](#), *Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system*.

i Note

We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries be rapid charged by a specialist garage.

Replacing



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 224.

When replacing a battery, the new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, amperage and be the same size. Suitable vehicle battery types can be purchased from a specialist garage.

We recommend having the battery replaced by a specialist garage, where the new vehicle battery will be installed properly and the original battery will be disposed of in accordance with national regulations.

Disconnecting and reconnecting



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 224.

On disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery, the following functions are initially deactivated or are no longer able to operate fault-free:

Operation	Operating measure
Electrical power window (operational faults)	» page 49
Enter the radio/navigation system code number	» <i>Operating instructions for Infotainment Radio</i> or » <i>Operating instructions for Infotainment Navigation</i>
Setting the clock	» page 14
Data in the multifunction display are deleted	» page 29

i Note

We recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage in order to ensure full functionality of all electrical systems.

Automatic load deactivation



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 224.

The vehicle voltage control unit automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the battery is subjected to heavy loads. This manifests itself by the following.

- » The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.
- » Where appropriate large convenience consumers, e.g. seat heaters, rear window heaters, have their power limited or in case of emergency shut off completely.

! CAUTION

- Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
- Consumers which are supplied via a 12 V socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.

i Note

Driving comfort is not disrupted by any shutting off of consumers. Often the driver is not aware of it having taken place.

Wheels

Tyres and wheel rims

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Service life of tyres	229
New tyres	230
Unidirectional tyres	231
Tyre control display	231
Spare wheel	232
Full wheel trim	233
Wheel bolts	233
Wheel bolts	233

WARNING

- The national legal requirements must be observed for the use of tyres.
- Observe the national legal regulations relating to the use of snow chains and the maximum vehicle speed with snow chains.

WARNING

The following instructions for the use of tyres must be observed.

- During the first 500 km, new tyres do not offer optimum grip and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving – risk of accident!
- On all four wheels, use only radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.
- For safety reasons, do not replace tyres individually.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** for fitted tyres – risk of accident!
- Never exceed the maximum permissible **speed** for fitted tyres – risk of accident!
- An incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling – risk of accident!

WARNING (Continued)

- Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any doubt that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.
- Only use those tyres or wheel rims which have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle. Failure to observe this instruction will adversely affect the road safety of your vehicle – risk of accident!

WARNING

- Observe the following information regarding damage and wear of tyres.
- Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.
 - Never drive with damaged tyres – risk of accident!
 - Immediately replace damaged wheel rims or tyres.
 - You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
 - Worn tyres do not provide the necessary adhesion to the road surface particularly at high speeds on wet roads. One could experience “aquaplaning” (uncontrolled movements of the vehicle – “swimming” on a wet road surface).

WARNING

- Observe the following information regarding the tyre inflation pressure.
- The tyre control display does not absolve the driver of the responsibility to ensure the correct tyre inflation pressure. Check the tyre inflation pressure at regular intervals.
 - Too low or too high inflation pressure impairs handling – risk of an accident!
 - If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre must perform a greater rolling resistance. At higher speeds the tyre will warm up as a result of this. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blowout.

WARNING

- Observe the following information regarding the wheel bolts.
- The wheel bolts must be clean and must turn easily. Never treat them with grease or oil.

! WARNING (Continued)

- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rim can come loose when the car is moving – risk of accident! A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.
- In case of incorrect treatment of the wheel bolts, the wheel can loosen when the car is moving – risk of accident!

! WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the spare wheel.

- Only use the spare wheel while absolutely necessary.
- Never drive with more than one spare wheel mounted.
- The snow chains cannot be used on the spare wheel.

! CAUTION

- If a spare wheel is used that is not identical to the fitted tyres, the following must be observed » [page 232, Spare wheel](#).
- Protect the tyres from contact with oil, grease and fuel.
- Replace lost dust caps.
- If, in the event of a puncture, it is necessary to fit a spare wheel with a tyre without a dedicated running direction or the opposite running direction, drive carefully as the optimum characteristics of the tyre are no longer applicable in this situation.



For the sake of the environment

Tyres which are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

i Note

- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres be carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Service life of tyres

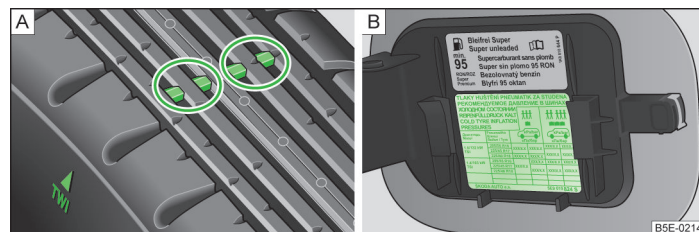


Fig. 189 Principle sketch: Tyre tread with wear indicators/Open fuel filler flap with a table detailing the tyre size and tyre inflation pressure

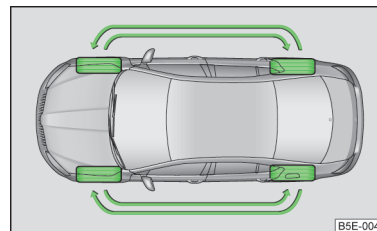


Fig. 190 Changing wheels around



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 228.

The life of tyres depends on the inflation pressure, driving style, and other circumstances. Following the advice below can extend the service life of your tyres.

Tyre pressure

Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

The tyre pressures for **tyres** are shown on the inside of the fuel filler flap » [Fig. 189 - B](#).

The tyre pressure should be at the highest pressure specified for your vehicle at all times.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

With greater payload, adjust the tyre inflation pressure accordingly.

Driving style

Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the wear of your tyres.

Balancing wheels

The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, there are a wide range of influences which may result in an imbalance. This may become apparent by a "vibration" in the steering.

Have the wheels rebalanced after replacing the tyres.

Wheel alignment errors

An incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear on the tyres.

Tyre damage

Drive over kerbs and other such obstacles slowly and perpendicularly wherever possible in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis. Remove foreign bodies (e.g. small stones) from the tyre profile immediately.

Changing wheels around

If significantly greater wear is present on the front tyres, we recommend replacing the front wheels with the rear wheels as shown in the diagram » Fig. 190 . You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

We recommend that you change the tyres around every 10000 km in order to achieve even wear on all tyres and to obtain optimal tyre life.

Storing tyres

Mark them previously used tyres so that you are able to fit them on again to run in the same direction.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

Wear indicators

The base of the tread of the tyres has 1.6 mm high wear indicators installed. These wear indicators are evenly spaced around the circumference of the tyre, depending on the make » Fig. 189 - [A]. Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

Tyre age

Tyres age losing their original characteristics, even if they are not used. Therefore, we recommend not to use summer or winter tyres that are older than 6 years or 4 years respectively.

New tyres



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 228.

Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle on all 4 wheels.

The tyre/wheel combinations which are approved for your vehicle are indicated in your vehicle documents.

Where possible replace tyres by axle. Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.

Explanation of tyre markings

195/65 R 15 91 T

What this means is:

195	Tyre width in mm » Fig. 189 on page 229 - [B]
65	Height/width ratio in % » Fig. 189 on page 229 - [B]
R	Code letter for the type of tyre - Radial » Fig. 189 on page 229 - [B]
15	Diameter of wheel in inches » Fig. 189 on page 229 - [B]
91	Load index » !
T	Speed symbol » !

The **date of manufacture** is stated on the tyre wall (possibly on the **inside**). e.g.

DOT ... 10 13...

means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 10th week of 2013.

Load index

This indicates the maximum permissible load on each individual tyre.

91	615 kg
92	630 kg
93	650 kg
94	670 kg

95	690 kg
97	730 kg
99	775 kg

Speed symbol

This indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with mounted tyres for the respective category.

M	130 km/h
Q	160 km/h
R	170 km/h
S	180 km/h
T	190 km/h
U	200 km/h
H	210 km/h
V	240 km/h
W	270 km/h
Y	300 km/h

! CAUTION

The information about the load index and the speed symbol for your vehicle are listed in your vehicle documents.

Unidirectional tyres

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 228.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The indicated direction of rotation must be adhered to in order to obtain the best benefits from the characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics are mainly.

- Increased driving stability.
- Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
- Reduced tyre noise and reduced tyre wear.

Tyre control display



Fig. 191
Button for setting the tyre inflation pressure control value



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 228.

Calibration

After changing the tyre inflation pressure » [page 229](#),  in section *Introduction*, after changing one or several wheels, the position of a wheel on the vehicle or when the warning light lights up while driving, a **calibration** of the system must be carried out as follows:

- Inflate all of the tyres to the specified inflation pressure » [page 229](#).
- Switch on the ignition.
- Start the system calibration.

On vehicles **with Infotainment** » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

On vehicles **with the radio preinstallation**.

- Press the symbol button  » [Fig. 191](#) for longer than 2 seconds.

While pressing the button,  the warning light comes  on. At the same time, the system memory is cleared and the new calibration process is started. This is confirmed by an acoustic signal followed by the warning light  going off.

If the warning light  does not go out after the calibration, this indicates a system fault. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Tyre pressure indicator

The warning light  lights up when any of the following conditions are true.

- The tyre inflation pressure is low.
- The structure of the tyre is damaged.
- The vehicle is loaded on one side.

- The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
- Snow chains are mounted.
- The spare wheel is mounted.
- One wheel per axle was changed.

For vehicles **with Infotainment¹⁾** it can be determined which tyres should be checked » *Manual Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (key CAR)*.

! WARNING

- When the warning light  illuminates, immediately reduce the speed and avoid sudden steering and brake manoeuvres. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and inspect the tyres and their inflation pressure.
- Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the  may light up after a delay, or not at all.

! CAUTION

- The tyre control display does therefore not replace the regular tyre inflation pressure control, as the system cannot detect an even loss of pressure.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage. In this case carefully bring the vehicle to a standstill without sudden steering movements or sharp braking.
- To ensure a proper functioning of the tyre control display, it is necessary to repeat the basic setting every 10000 km or once a year.

Spare wheel

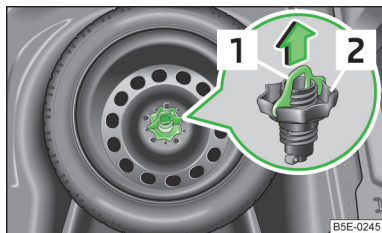


Fig. 192
Luggage compartment: Spare wheel

BSE-0245



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 228.

The spare wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with a special bolt » [Fig. 192](#).

Take out wheel

- Open the boot lid.
- Raise the floor covering in the boot » [page 99](#).
- Remove the box with the tool kit.
- Pull out safety lock [1](#) » [Fig. 192](#) in the direction of the arrow.
- Unscrew the [2](#) bolt in a counterclockwise direction.
- Remove the wheel.

Store wheel away

- Place the replaced wheel into the spare wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downward.
- Screw in bolt [2](#) » [Fig. 192](#) in a clockwise direction, until the wheel is secure.
- Insert safety lock [1](#) » [Fig. 192](#) in the opposite direction to which the arrow is pointing.
- Place the box with the tool kit back into the spare wheel and secure it with the tape.
- Fold back the floor covering in the boot » [page 99](#).
- Shut the boot lid.

Install a wheel having the appropriate version and dimensions as soon as possible.

If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted » .

Temporary spare wheel

A yellow warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.

- The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
- Be specially attentive when driving.
- The inflation pressure for the temporary spare wheel is identical to the maximum inflation pressure of the standard tyres.
- Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage, as it is not intended for long-term use.

¹⁾ Does not apply to vehicles with the Infotainment Blues and Swing system.

! WARNING

- Never use the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the fitted tyres, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

! CAUTION

Observe instructions on the warning sign of the emergency wheel.

Full wheel trim



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 228.

Extracting

- Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
- Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing

- Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the valve opening provided.
- Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

! CAUTION

- Use the pressure of your hand only, do not strike the full wheel trim. Avoid heavy knocks when the trim is not yet inserted in the wheel rim. This could cause damage to the guide and centring elements of the trim.
- When using the anti-theft wheel bolt, ensure that it is in the hole in the valve area » [page 240](#), *Securing wheels against theft*.
- If **wheel trims** are retrofitted it must be ensured that an adequate flow of air is assured to cool the brake system.

Wheel bolts



Fig. 193
Remove the cap



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 228.

Extracting

- Push the extraction pliers » [page 236](#) sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the pliers are positioned at the collar of the cap » [Fig. 193](#).
- Remove the cap.

Installing

- Push the caps onto the wheel bolts up to the stop.

The wheel bolt caps are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel.

Wheel bolts



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 228.

Wheels and **wheel bolts** are matched to each other in terms of design. Each time you fit other wheels, e.g. light alloy wheels or wheels with winter tyres, you must also use the matching wheel bolts of the correct length and shape of spherical cap. This is a prerequisite for ensuring that wheels are attached correctly.

Winter operation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Winter tyres	234
Snow chains	234 ■

Winter tyres



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 234.

The handling of your vehicle will be significantly improved when driving on wintry roads if you fit winter tyres. Summer tyres on ice, snow and at temperatures below 7 °C have less grip. This is especially true of **low-profile tyres** or **high-speed tyres**.

To achieve the best possible handling properties, winter tyres must be fitted on all 4 wheels, the minimum tread depth must be 4 mm and tyres must be no older than 4 years.

Winter tyres of a lower speed category can be used provided that the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

The winter tyre speed limit is set in the Infotainment system » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.



For the sake of the environment

Fit the summer tyres on again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C. The fuel consumption is also lower. ■

Snow chains



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 234.

When driving on wintry roads, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Wheel size	Depth (D)	Tyre size
6J x 15 ^{a)}	43 mm	195/65 R15
6J x 16 ^{b)}	48 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 17 ^{b)}	48 mm	205/50 R17

^{a)} Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 13 mm.

^{b)} Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 12 mm.



CAUTION

- The chains must be removed when driving on roads which are free of snow. They adversely affect the handling of your vehicle, damage the tyres and are rapidly destroyed.
- Remove the **full wheel trims** before installing the snow chains. ■

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

First aid kit and warning triangle	235
Fire extinguisher	236
Vehicle tool kit	236 ■

First aid kit and warning triangle

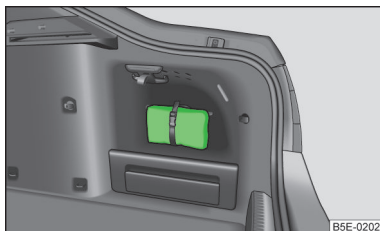


Fig. 194
Placing of the first-aid kit

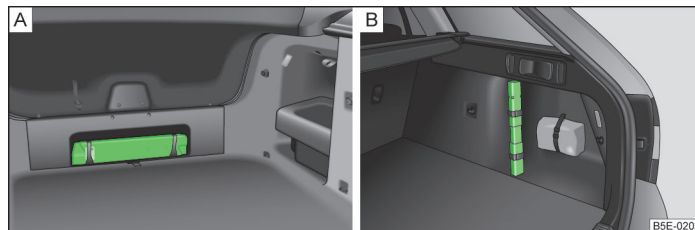


Fig. 195 Placing of the warning triangle: Octavia/Octavia Estate



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 235.

First-aid box

The first aid kit can be attached by a strap in the right-hand storage compartment in the luggage compartment » Fig. 194.

Warning triangle - Octavia

The warning triangle can be attached to the rear wall trim panel with rubber straps » Fig. 195 - [A].

Warning triangle - Octavia Estate

The warning triangle can be secured with straps in the right storage compartment in the luggage compartment » Fig. 195 - [B].



WARNING

The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.



Note

- Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.
- We recommend using a first-aid box from ŠKODA Original Accessories available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Fire extinguisher

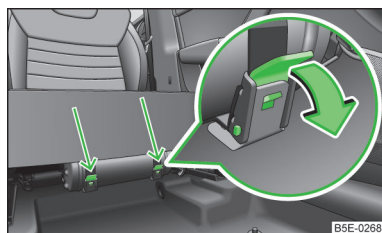


Fig. 196
Fire extinguisher



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 235.

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a holder underneath the driver's seat.

Removing/attaching

- Loosen the two straps by pulling the buckles in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 196.
- Remove the fire extinguisher.

Follow these steps in the reverse order for attachment.

Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person once a year. The national legal requirements must be observed.

! WARNING

The fire extinguisher must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

i Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with national legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. If the fire extinguisher is used after the expiration date, its proper function is not assured.
- The fire extinguisher is part of the scope of delivery in certain countries only.

Vehicle tool kit

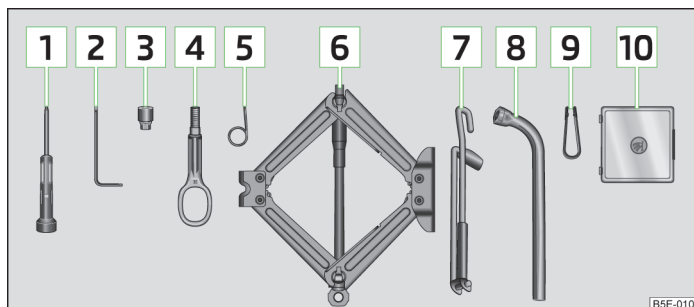


Fig. 197 Vehicle tool kit



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 235.

The vehicle tool kit and the lifting jack are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel. There is also space here for the removable ball rod for the trailer towing device. The box is attached with a strap on the spare wheel.

The components of the vehicle tool kit (depending on vehicle equipment) » Fig. 197.

- 1 Screwdriver
- 2 Key for removing and installing the tail light
- 3 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
- 4 Towing eye
- 5 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
- 6 Car jack
- 7 Crank for the jack
- 8 Wheel wrench
- 9 Extraction pliers for wheel bolt caps
- 10 Replacement bulb set

Screw the jack back into its home position after use to allow you to store it in the box with the toolkit.

WARNING

- The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift heavier vehicles or other loads – risk of injury!
- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the luggage compartment.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Preparation	237
Changing a wheel	238
Follow-up tasks	238
Loosening/tightening wheel bolts	239
Raising the vehicle	239
Securing wheels against theft	240

WARNING

- If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
- If the vehicle is subsequently fitted with tyres which are different from those it was fitted with at the works, follow these guidelines » [page 230](#), *New tyres*.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for lifting the vehicle.

- If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, tiled floor, etc.
- Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- Never start the engine with the vehicle sitting on the raised jack – risk of injury.

CAUTION

- The tightening torque specified for the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is **120 Nm**.
- If the wheel bolts are fastened too tightly, this can cause damage to the anti-theft wheel bolt or the adapter.

Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when changing a wheel.

Preparation



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 237.

Always change a wheel on a level surface as far as possible.

The following steps must be carried out before actually changing the wheel:

- Have **all of the occupants get out of the vehicle**. While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (they should instead remain behind a crash barrier).
- Switch off the engine.
- Move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the selector lever for the automatic gearbox into position **P**.
- Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
- Uncouple any trailers.
- Remove the **vehicle tool kit** » page 236 and the **spare wheel** » page 232 from the luggage compartment.

Changing a wheel



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 237.

- Remove the full wheel trim » page 233 or caps » page 233.
- First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts » page 239.
- Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground » page 239.
- Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
- Remove the wheel carefully.
- Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
- Lower the vehicle.
- Tighten the wheel bolts opposite each other using the wheel wrench (alternating crosswise). Tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt last » page 239.
- Replace the wheel trim or the caps.



Note

- All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
- Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts!
- When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 228.

Follow-up tasks



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 237.

The following steps must also be performed after changing the wheel.

- Stow and attach the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well using a special bolt » page 232.
- Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the band.
- **Check the tyre pressure** on the installed spare wheel as soon as possible.
- Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.
- Replace the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair options.



Note

- If it is determined that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn when changing the wheel, the bolts must be replaced before checking the tightening torque.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts

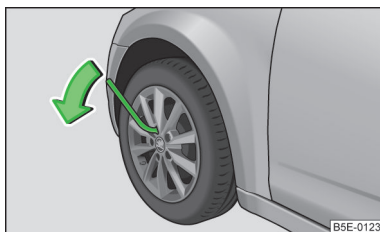


Fig. 198
Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 237.

Release

- Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop¹⁾.
- Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt about **one** turn in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 198.

Tightening

- Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop¹⁾.
- Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 198, until it is tight.

! WARNING

Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) as long as the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could come off and fall down – risk of injury!

i Note

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

Raising the vehicle

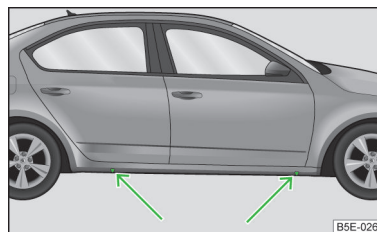


Fig. 199
Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

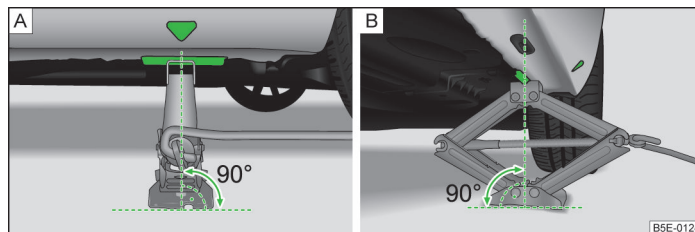


Fig. 200 Attach lifting jack



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 237.

Position the lifting jack below the jacking point closest to the faulty wheel » Fig. 199. The jacking point is located directly below the engraving in the lower sill.

- Insert the crank into the mount on the car jack » page 236.
- Position the lifting jack below the jacking point with the crank and move it up until its claw is positioned below the vertical web of the lower sill.
- Align the lifting jack so that its claw grasps the web » Fig. 200 - [B].
- Support the base plate of the lifting jack with its entire surface resting on level ground and ensure that the lever is positioned vertically to the point at which the claw grasps the web » Fig. 200 - [A].

¹⁾ Use the appropriate adapter for undoing and tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 240.

➤ Continue turning up the jack until the wheel is just about lifted off the ground.

! WARNING

- Only raise the vehicle at the attachment points.
- Choose a flat and firm surface for jacking the vehicle.

Securing wheels against theft

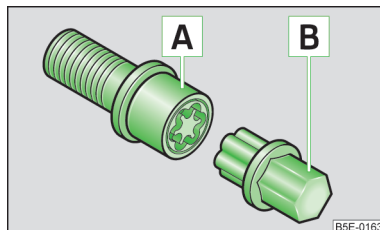


Fig. 201
Principle sketch: Anti-theft
wheel bolt with adapter



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 237.

The anti-theft wheel bolts can only be removed/tightened with the aid of the adapter » [page 236](#), *Vehicle tool kit*.

- Remove the cover from the anti-theft wheel bolt.
- Insert the adapter **[B]** » [Fig. 201](#) with its toothed side fully into the inner tooth-ing of the anti-theft wheel bolt **[A]** until the stop so that only the outer hexagon is jutting out.
- Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter **[B]** up to the stop.
- Loosen or tighten the wheel bolt » [page 239](#).
- After removing the adapter, replace the cap on the anti-theft wheel bolt.
- Have the **tightening torque checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.



Note

- Make a note of the code number hammered into the rear side of the adapter or the rear side of the anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a replacement adapter from ŠKODA Genuine Parts if required.
- We recommend that you always carry the adapter for the wheel bolts with you in the vehicle. It should be stowed in the vehicle tool kit.
- The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Part-ner.

Tyre repair



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Breakdown kit	241
Preparations for using the breakdown kit	241
Sealing and inflating the tyre	242
Check after 10 minutes' driving	242

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm.

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit **not at all intended to replace** a per-manent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist ga-rage.

The wheel must not be removed during repair.

Do not remove foreign bodies, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre.

The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances.

- There is damage to the rim.
- The outside temperature is less than -20 °C.
- The tears or punctures are greater than 4 mm in size.
- There is damage to the tyre wall.
- Driving with very low tyre pressure or with a completely flat tyre.
- If the use-by-date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

! WARNING

- A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre.
- Do not travel faster than 80 km/h.
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes.
- The sealant is hazardous to health. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.



For the sake of the environment

Used sealant or sealant whose expiry date has passed must be disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations.

i Note

- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.
- A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.
- Immediately replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 240.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

Components of the breakdown kit » Fig. 202.

- 1 Valve remover
- 2 Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph"
- 3 Inflation hose with plug
- 4 Air compressor
- 5 Tyre inflation hose
- 6 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
- 7 Air release valve
- 8 ON and OFF switch
- 9 12 volt cable connector
- 10 Tyre inflator bottle with sealing agent
- 11 Replacement valve core

The valve remover **1** has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core. This is the only way in which you can remove and re-install the valve core from the tyre valve. The same also applies to the replacement valve core **11**.

Breakdown kit

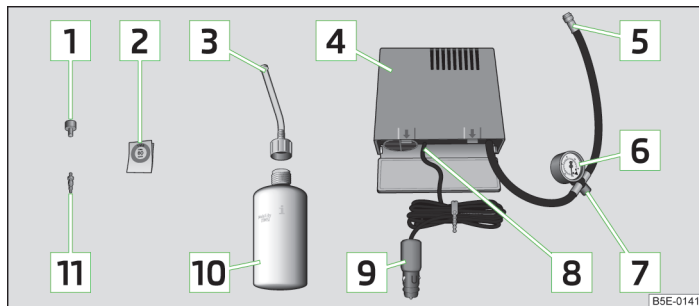


Fig. 202 Components of the breakdown kit



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 240.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the breakdown kit.

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
- If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
- Have **all of the occupants get out of the vehicle**. While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (they should instead remain behind a crash barrier).
- Switch off the engine and move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the selector lever on the automatic gearbox into **position P**.
- Firmly apply the **handbrake**.

- Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » page 240.
- Uncouple any trailers.
- Remove the **breakdown kit** from the luggage compartment.
- Stick the sticker [2] » Fig. 202 on page 241 onto the dash panel in the driver's line of vision.
- Do not remove the foreign body, e.g. screw or nail, from the tyre.
- Unscrew the valve cap.
- Use the valve remover [1] to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

Sealing and inflating the tyre



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings [1] on page 240.

Sealing

- Forcefully shake the tyre inflator bottle [10] » Fig. 202 on page 241 back and forth several times.
- Firmly screw the inflation hose [3] onto the tyre inflator bottle [10] clockwise. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
- Remove the plug from the inflation hose [3] and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
- Hold the bottle [10] with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
- Remove the empty tyre inflator bottle from the valve.
- Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover [1].

Inflating

- Screw the air compressor tyre inflation hose [5] » Fig. 202 on page 241 firmly onto the tyre valve.
- Check that the air release valve [7] is closed.
- Start the engine and run it in idle.
- Plug the connector [9] into 12 Volt socket » page 84.
- Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch [8].
- Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » [1].
- Switch off the air compressor.
- If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose [5] from the tyre valve.
- Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.

- Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose [5] back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
- If you cannot reach the required tyre inflation pressure here either, this means the tyre has sustained too much damage. You cannot seal with tyre with the breakdown kit » [1].
- Switch off the air compressor.
- Remove the tyre inflation hose [5] from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes » page 242.



WARNING

- During inflation, the tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot – risk of injury!
- Do not place the hot tyre inflation hose or hot air compressor on flammable materials – risk of fire!
- If you cannot inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bar, this means the damage sustained was too serious. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. 🚫 Do not drive the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.



CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the latest – risk of overheating! Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Check after 10 minutes' driving



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings [1] on page 240.

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes!

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or less

- 🚫 **Do not drive the vehicle!** You cannot properly seal with tyre with the breakdown kit.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or more

- Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to the correct value (see inside of fuel filler cap).

- Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle	243
Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system	244

! WARNING

- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not carry out a jump start with the battery of another vehicle – risk of explosion!
- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment » [page 215](#).
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – risk of short circuit!
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – risk of short circuit!
- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- Do not bend over the battery – risk of caustic burns!
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery – risk of explosion!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.

! CAUTION

- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.
- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the system of the vehicle.
- We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

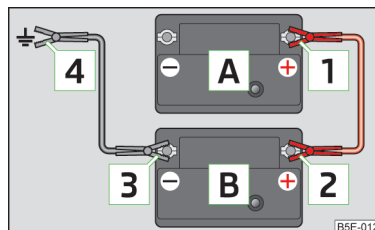


Fig. 203
Jump-starting: A – flat battery, B – battery providing current

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on [page 243](#).

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat. Jump-start cables are required for this purpose.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

- Attach clamp **1** to the positive terminal of the discharged battery **A** » [Fig. 203](#).
- Attach clamp **2** to the positive terminal of the battery supplying power **B**.
- Attach clamp **3** to the negative terminal of the battery supplying power **B**.
- Attach the clamp **4** to a solid metal part which is connected firmly to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

Starting engine

- Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
- Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
- If the engine does not start, terminate the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for 30 seconds before repeating the process.
- Disconnect the cables in exactly the **reverse order** to the one described above. ►

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables

Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Observe the instructions of the jumper lead manufacturer.

Positive cable – colour coding in the majority of cases is red.

Negative cable – colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system

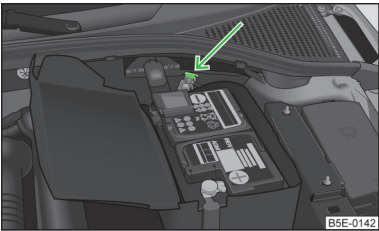


Fig. 204
Engine earth: START-STOP system

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 243.**

On vehicles with the START-STOP system, the jump-start cable of the charger must never be connected directly to the negative pole of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth » [Fig. 204](#).

Towing the vehicle

 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front towing eye	245
Rear towing eye	245
Vehicles with a tow hitch	246

Vehicles with **manual transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised.

Vehicles with **automatic transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged!

A **tow bar** is the safest way of towing a vehicle and also minimises any shocks. Only use a **tow rope** if a suitable tow bar is not available.

When towing, the following guidelines must be observed.

Driver of the tow vehicle

- Release the clutch particularly gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
- On vehicles with a manual transmission, only push down on the accelerator pedal once the rope is taught.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

Driver of the towed vehicle

- Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not blocked and so that the turn signal lights, horn, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
- Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle.

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taught.

 CAUTION

- Do not tow start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » [page 243, Jump-starting](#).
- If the gearbox no longer contains any oil because of a defect, your vehicle must only be towed with the driven wheels raised clear of the ground or on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer.
- The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.
- To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.

- While towing, take care to avoid impermissibly high tensile forces or jerky loads. There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.
- Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes** » page 245, *Front towing eye* or » page 245, *Rear towing eye* to the **detachable ball head of the towing device** » page 169.

i Note

- We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Towing another vehicle requires a certain amount of practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the particular points about towing a vehicle. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.
- When towing, respect the national legal provisions, especially those which relate to the identification of the towing vehicle and the vehicle being towed.
- The tow rope must not be twisted as it may in certain circumstances result in the front towing eye being unscrewed out of your vehicle.

- After unscrewing the towing eye, insert the area **B** of the cap under the right-hand side of the hole in the front bumper and then press on the opposite side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

- Manually screw the towing eye as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow **2** » Fig. 205 » **i**.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

- Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow **2**.

! CAUTION

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

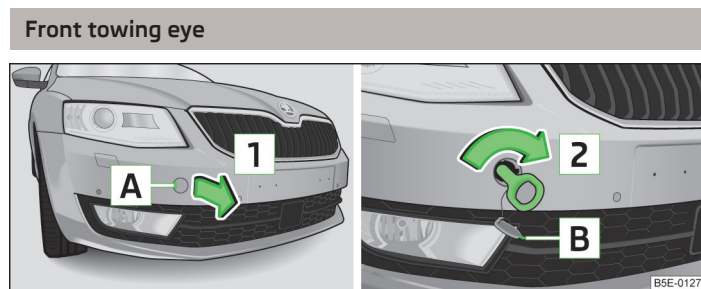


Fig. 205 Front bumper: Removing the cap/installing the towing eye

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 244.

Removing/installing the cap

- Press on the cap in the area **A** » Fig. 205.
- Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow **1**.

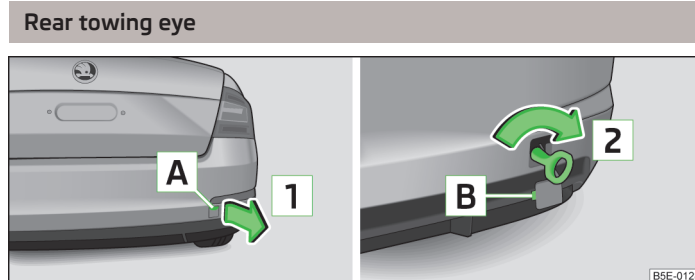


Fig. 206 Rear bumper: Removing the cap/installing the towing eye

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 244.

Removing/installing the cap

- Press on the cover in area **A** » Fig. 206 (for vehicles Octavia RS, Octavia Estate RS on the right edge of the cap press).
- Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow **1**.

- Thread after unscrewing the towing area **B** of the cover under the upper side of the hole in the rear bumper (for vehicles Octavia RS, Octavia Combi RS under the right side of the hole).
- Press on the lower side of the cap (for vehicles Octavia RS, Octavia RS on the left side of the cap press).

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

- Manually screw the towing eye as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow **2** » Fig. 206 » **!**.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

- Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow **2**.

! CAUTION

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Vehicles with a tow hitch

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 244.**

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, there is no mount for the screw-in towing eye behind the cap.

Use the built-in detachable ball rod for towing » page 169, *Towing device*.

Towing the vehicle using the towing device is a viable alternative solution to using the towing eye.

If the towing device is removed completely, it must be replaced with the standard reinforcement of the rear bumper which is part of the mount for the towing eye.

If this procedure is not observed, the vehicle may not meet the national legal provisions.

! CAUTION

The detachable ball rod and/or the vehicle can be damaged if an unsuitable tow bar is used.

Note

The detachable ball rod must always be in the vehicle so that it can be used for towing, if necessary.

Remote control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the battery in the remote control key	247
Synchronising the remote control	247
Replace the battery in the remote control of the auxiliary heater (parking heater)	247

! CAUTION

- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.
- When replacing the battery, pay attention to the correct polarity.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the used battery in accordance with national legal provisions.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

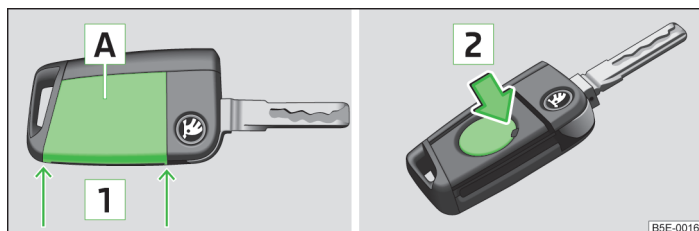


Fig. 207 Remove cover/take out battery

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 246.

The battery is located under a cover **A** » Fig. 207.

We recommend having the key batteries replaced by a specialist garage. However, if you would like to replace the discharged battery yourself proceed as follows.

- Flip out the key.
- Press off the battery cover with your thumb or using a flat screwdriver in the region of the arrows **1**.
- Remove the discharged battery from the key by pressing the battery down in the region of the arrow **2**.
- Insert the new battery.
- Place the battery cover on the key and press it down until it clicks into place.

Note

- The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control key after replacing the battery » page 247.
- If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Synchronising the remote control

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 246.

If the vehicle does not unlock when pressing the remote control, the key may not be synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the remote control key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery in the remote control key was replaced.

Synchronise the key as follows.

- Press any button on the remote control key.
- Pressing of the button means that the door will unlock with the key within 1 minute.

Replace the battery in the remote control of the auxiliary heater (parking heater)

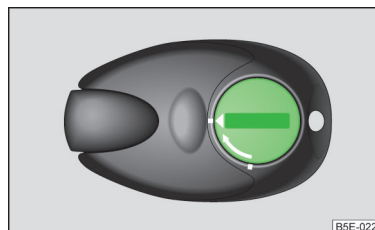


Fig. 208
Radio remote control: Battery cover

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 246.

The battery is located under a cover on the back of the radio remote control » Fig. 208.

- Insert a flat, blunt object, such as a coin, into the gap of the battery cover.
- Turn the cover against the direction of the arrow up to the mark to open the cover.
- Replace the battery.
- Return the battery cover.
- Turn the cover in the direction of the arrow up to the initial marking, engage.

Emergency unlocking/locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking the driver's door	248
Locking a door	248
Unlocking the tailgate	249
Selector lever-emergency unlocking	249 ■

Unlocking/locking the driver's door

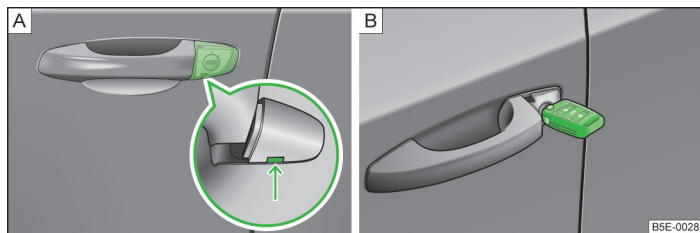


Fig. 209 Handle on the driver's door: covered locking cylinder/locking cylinder with key

 First read and observe the introductory information given on page 248.

- Pull on the handle.
- Push the vehicle key into the recess on the bottom side of the cover in the region of the arrow and fold it upwards » Fig. 209 - [A].
- Insert the vehicle key (the buttons facing upward) into the locking cylinder and lock/unlock the vehicle » Fig. 209 - [B].

CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking. ■

Locking a door

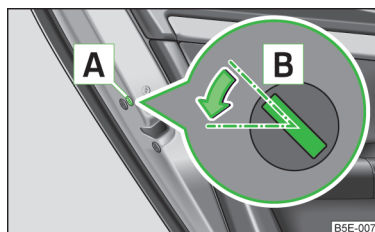


Fig. 210
Left rear door: Emergency locking

 First read and observe the introductory information given on page 248.

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the face side of the doors which have no locking cylinder, it is only visible after opening the door.

- Remove the panel [A] » Fig. 210.
- Insert the key into the slot [B] and turn it into the horizontal position in the direction of the arrow (mirror-inverted on the right doors).
- Replace the cover.

After closing the door, it cannot be opened from the outside. The door is unlocked by pulling on the door opening lever and is then opened from the outside. ■

Unlocking the tailgate

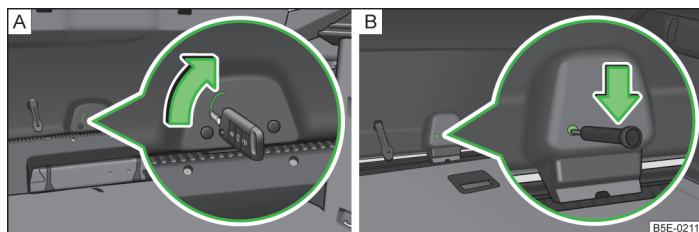


Fig. 211 Emergency unlocking: Octavia/Octavia Estate



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 248.

Unlocking (Octavia)

- Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 78.
- Insert the vehicle key into the slot in the trim panel as far as the stop » Fig. 211 - [A].
- Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
- Open the boot lid.

Unlocking (Octavia Estate)

- Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 78.
- Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the opening of the trim as far as it goes » Fig. 211 - [B].
- Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
- Open the boot lid.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

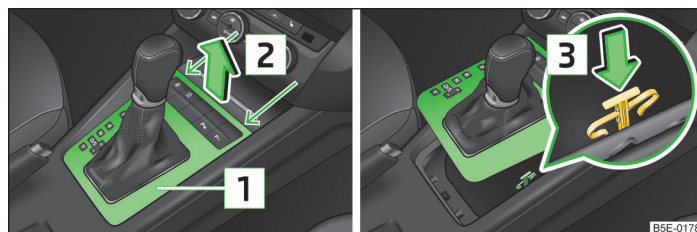


Fig. 212 Selector lever-emergency unlocking



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 248.

- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- Open the stowage compartment in front centre console » page 82.
- Grab hold of the cover [1] in the area of the arrows and carefully raise it forwards in the direction of the arrow [2] and then backwards » Fig. 212.
- Use a finger to press the yellow plastic part in the direction of the arrow [3].
- At the same time, press the locking button in the selector lever and move the selector lever to position N.

If the selector lever is moved again to position P, it is once again blocked.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades	250
Replacing the rear window wiper blade	250



WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades

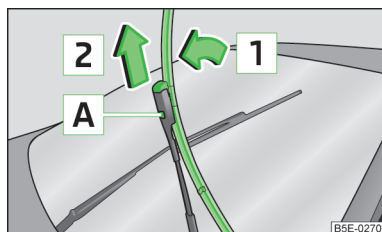


Fig. 213
Windscreen wiper blade



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 249.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blade, put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Service position for changing wiper blades

- Closing the bonnet.
- Switch the ignition off and on again.
- Within 10 seconds, press the lever in position **4** and hold it for around 2 seconds » Fig. 42 on page 66.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the service position.

Removing the wiper blade

- Raise the wiper arm away from the window » Fig. 213.
- Tilt the wiper blade as far as it can go in the direction of the windscreen wiper arm - arrow **1**.
- Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and unlock the securing mechanism **A**.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow **2**.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

- Push the windscreen wiper blade to the stop until it locks into place.
- Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
- Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.
- Turn on the ignition and press the lever into position **4** » Fig. 42 on page 66.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the home position.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade

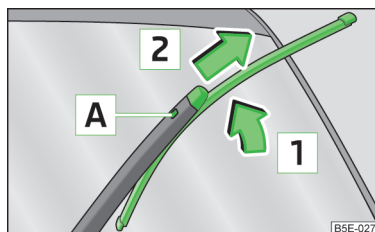


Fig. 214
Rear window wiper blade



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 249.

Removing the wiper blade

- Raise the wiper arm away from the window » Fig. 214.
- Tilt the wiper blade as far as it can go in the direction of the windscreen wiper arm - arrow **1**.
- Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and unlock the securing mechanism **A**.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow **2**.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

- Push the windscreen wiper blade to the stop until it locks into place.
- Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
- Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fuses in the dash panel – LHD	252
Fuses in the dash panel – RHD	252
Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel	253
Fuses in the engine compartment	254
Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment	254

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

Switch off the ignition and the corresponding power consuming device before replacing a fuse.

Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » [page 253](#), *Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel* or » [page 254](#), *Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment*.

Electrically adjustable seats are protected by **automatic circuit breakers**, which switch on again automatically after a few seconds after the overload has been eliminated.

Fuse colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
dark brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow/blue	20
white	25
green/pink	30
orange/green	40
red	50

WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » [page 215](#).

CAUTION

- "Never repair" fuses, and do not replace them with fuses of a higher amperage – risk of fire! This may also cause damage at other points in the electrical system.
- If a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time, have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage.
- A blown fuse is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.
- The cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be applied correctly. Water may get into the fuse box if the cover is not replaced properly - there is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- There can be several power consuming devices for one fuse.
- There can be several consumer devices for one fuse, depending on the vehicle's equipment.
- Multiple fuses may exist for a single power consuming device.
- Multiple power consuming devices can share a single fuse.

Fuses in the dash panel - LHD

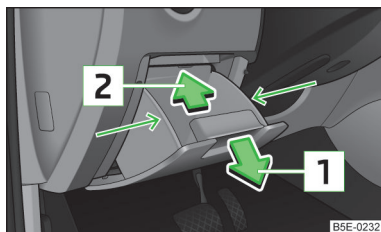


Fig. 215
Storage compartment on the driver's side: LHD



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 251.

On left-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is located behind the **storage compartment** in the left-hand section of the dash panel.

Replacing fuses

- Open the storage compartment » page 80.
- Grab hold of the storage compartment in the area of the arrows » Fig. 215.
- Fold out the storage compartment by pulling in the direction of arrow **1**.
- Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box in the engine room » Fig. 219 on page 254 .
- Place the clip on the respective fuse and pull this fuse out » page 253.
- Insert a new fuse.
- Replace the bracket at the original position.
- Fold back the storage compartment by pressing into the secured position in the dash panel in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Close the storage compartment.

Fuses in the dash panel - RHD

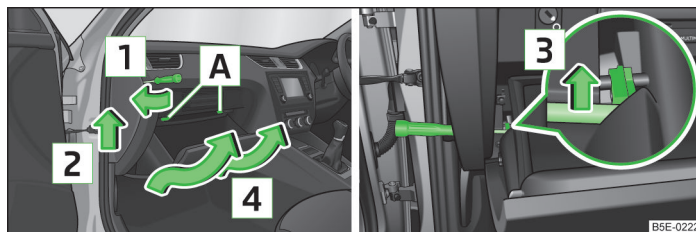


Fig. 216 Storage compartment on the front passenger's side: RHD



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 251.

On right-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is located on the front passenger's side behind the **storage compartment** in the left-hand section of the dash panel.

Removing the storage compartment and replacing the fuse

- Insert a screwdriver under the side cover » Fig. 216.
- Unlock the cover in the direction of the arrow **1**.
- Push the cover out in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Open the storage compartment.
- Unlock the brake rod of the storage compartment in the direction of the arrow **3** with the screwdriver.
- Remove the storage compartment in the direction of the arrow **4**.
- Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box in the engine room » Fig. 219 on page 254 .
- Place the clip on the respective fuse and pull this fuse out » page 253.
- Insert a new fuse.
- Replace the bracket at the original position.

Installing the storage compartment

- Pull in the storage compartment behind the brackets **A** » Fig. 216.
- Push in the storage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow **4**.
- Insert the brake rod and lock it against the arrow **3** with a screwdriver.
- Push in the side cover against the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Press the side cover fully against the direction of the arrow **1**.
- Close the storage compartment.

Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel



Fig. 217
Schematic representation of the fuse box



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 251.

No.	Power consumer
1	Not assigned
2	Not assigned
3	Not assigned
4	Not assigned
5	Data bus control unit
6	Alarm sensor
7	Control unit for the air conditioning system, heating, receiver for remote control for the auxiliary heating, selector lever for the automatic gearbox, relay for the rear window heater, relay for the windscreen heater
8	Light switch, rain sensor, diagnostic socket
9	Haldex clutch
10	Touchscreen
11	Heated rear seats
12	Radio
13	Belt tensioner - driver's side
14	Air blower for air conditioning, heating
15	Electric steering lock
16	Signal amplifier for telephone, telephone preinstallation
17	Instrument cluster

No.	Power consumer
18	Not assigned
19	KESY control unit
20	Steering wheel module
21	Not assigned
22	Luggage compartment door opening
23	Light - right
24	Panorama roof
25	Control unit for central locking front door right, power windows - left
26	Heated front seats
27	Music amplifier
28	Tow hitch
29	Not assigned
30	Not assigned
31	Headlight - left
32	Parking aid (Park Assist)
33	Airbag switch for hazard warning lights
34	TCS button, ESC, tyre control display, pressure sensor for air-conditioning, reverse light switch, dimming rear view mirror, START-STOP button, telephone preinstallation, control for heating of rear seats, sensor for air-conditioning, 230 V power socket, sound actuator
35	Headlight, headlamp beam adjustment, diagnostic connector, camera, radar
36	Headlight right
37	Headlight left
38	Tow hitch
39	Control unit for central locking front door - right, power windows - front and rear right
40	12-Volt power socket
41	CNG relay
42	Control unit for central locking rear door - left, right, headlight cleaning system, windscreen wipers
43	Visor for gas discharge bulbs, interior lighting
44	Tow hitch

No.	Power consumer
45	Control unit for control of seat adjustment
46	230-Volt power socket
47	Rear window wiper
48	Not assigned
49	Coil on starter relay, clutch pedal switch
50	Not assigned
51	Belt tensioner - front passenger side
52	Not assigned
53	Relay for rear window heater



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 251.

Replacing fuses

- Press together the interlocks of the cover simultaneously in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 218.
- Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Replace the appropriate fuse.
- Place the cover on top of the fusebox.
- Push in the interlocks on the cover and lock.

Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 251.

Fuses in the engine compartment

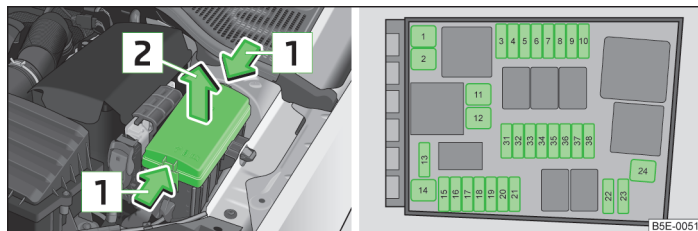


Fig. 218 Fuse box cover in engine compartment/Schematic diagram of the fuse box

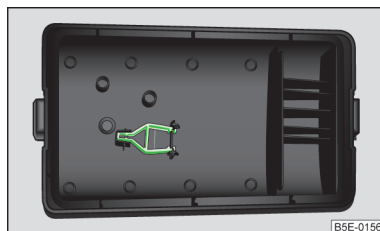


Fig. 219
Cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment: Plastic clip for fuses

No.	Power consumer
1	Control unit for ESC, ABS
2	Control unit for ESC, ABS
3	Engine control unit
4	Engine control unit, relay for electric auxiliary heating
5	Engine components
6	Brake sensor, engine components
7	Coolant pump, engine components
8	Lambda probe
9	Ignition, control unit for glow plug system, engine components
10	Control unit for fuel pump, ignition
11	Electrical auxiliary heating system
12	Electrical auxiliary heating system
13	Control unit for automatic gearbox
14	Not assigned
15	Horn
16	Ignition, fuel pump
17	Control unit for ABS, ESC, engine control unit
18	Data bus control unit
19	Windscreen wipers

No.	Power consumer
20	Alarm
21	Windscreen heater - left
22	Engine control unit
23	Starter
24	Electrical auxiliary heating system
31	Not assigned
32	Not assigned
33	Not assigned
34	Windscreen heater - right
35	Not assigned
36	Not assigned
37	Control unit for auxiliary heating
38	Not assigned

Bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Bulb arrangement in the headlights	256
Replacing the low beam bulb	256
Replacing bulb for main beam and daytime running lights	256
Replacing bulb for daytime running lights and parking lights	257
Change bulb for additional parking light	257
Replacing the bulb for the fog lights	258
Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light	258
Rear light (Octavia)	259
Replacing bulbs in rear light (Octavia)	260
Rear light (Octavia Estate)	261
Replacing bulbs in rear light (Octavia Estate)	262

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, we recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

- Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
- Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.
- A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a plastic box in the spare wheel or underneath the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » [page 215](#).
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- Bulbs H7 H8 and H15 are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Gas discharge bulbs (xenon bulbs) operate with a high voltage, professional knowledge is required - risk of death!
- The relevant lamp must always be switched off before a light bulb is replaced.

CAUTION

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.

Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.
- We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the main beam, low beam or fog lights.
- In case of failure of a xenon gas discharge lamp or an LED diode, visit a specialist garage.

Bulb arrangement in the headlights

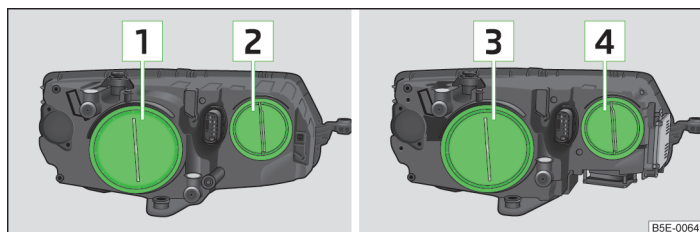


Fig. 220 Principle sketch: Headlight with halogen bulb/with Xenon bulb

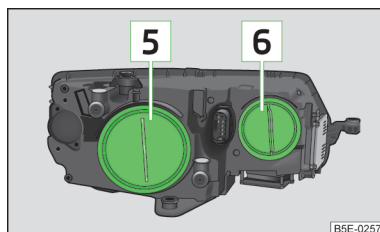


Fig. 221
Principle sketch: Headlights with
Xenon headlights and LED day-
time running lights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 255.

Headlight with halogen bulb

- 1 Low beam
- 2 Main beam, separate daytime running lights, and parking light

Headlights with Xenon light

- 3 Xenon gas discharge bulbs
- 4 Daytime running and parking light

Headlights with Xenon headlights and LED daytime running lights

- 5 Xenon gas discharge bulbs
- 6 additional parking light

Replacing the low beam bulb

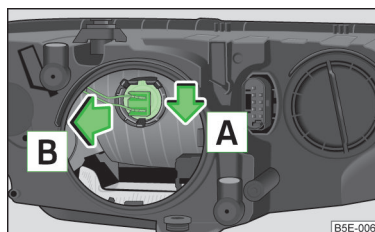


Fig. 222
Headlight with halogen bulb:
Bulb for low beam

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 255.

- Remove the rubber cover » Fig. 220 on page 256.
- Turn the connector with the bulb in downwards in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 222 and remove it in the direction of the arrow .
- Remove the connector.
- Insert a new light bulb in such a way that the fixing lugs of the bulb fit in the recesses of the reflector.
- Attach the connector.
- Insert the rubber cover .

Replacing bulb for main beam and daytime running lights

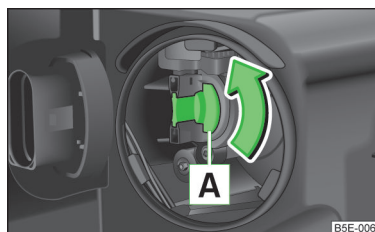


Fig. 223
Headlight with halogen bulb: Re-
placing the bulb for main beam
and separate daytime running
lights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 255.

- Remove the rubber cover » Fig. 220 on page 256.

- Turn the bulb holder **A** » Fig. 223 as far as it goes in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
- Replace the bulb, insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn in the opposite direction to that of the arrow as far as it goes.
- Insert the rubber cover **Z**.

Replacing bulb for daytime running lights and parking lights

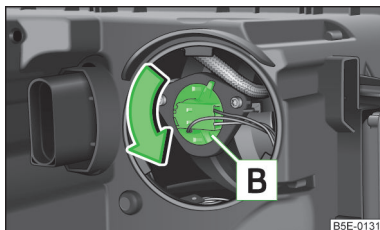


Fig. 224
Headlights with Xenon light:
Changing the bulb for daytime
running lights and parking light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 255.

- Remove the rubber cover **4** » Fig. 220 on page 256.
- Turn the bulb holder **B** » Fig. 224 as far as it goes in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
- Replace the bulb, insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn in the opposite direction to that of the arrow as far as it goes.
- Insert the rubber cover **4**.

Change bulb for additional parking light

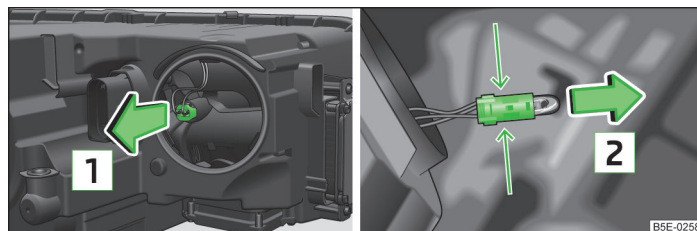


Fig. 225 Headlights with Xenon headlights and LED daytime running lights:
Bulb for additional parking light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 255.

Removing/replacing the bulb for the parking light

- Remove the rubber cover **6** » Fig. 221 on page 256.
- Remove the bulb holder with the bulb by jiggling it out in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 225.
- Grasp the lamp socket at the places marked by arrows.
- Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Insert a new bulb in the bulb holder up to the stop.
- Replace the bulb holder in the headlamp with the bulb.
- Insert the rubber cover **6**.

Replacing the bulb for the fog lights

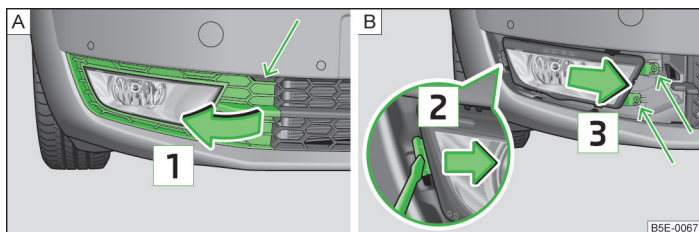


Fig. 226 Front bumper: Remove the protective grille/fog light

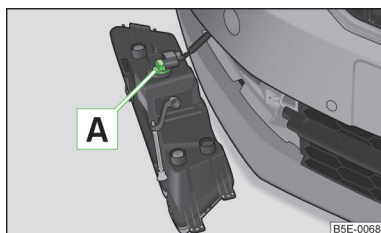


Fig. 227
Replacing the light bulb

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 255.

Removing the protective grille

- Undo the protective grille in the area of the arrow » Fig. 226 - [A] using the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 236, *Vehicle tool kit*.
- Remove the protective grille in the direction of the arrow [1].

Changing light bulbs for fog lights

- Use the screwdriver from the tool kit to unscrew the fog lamp » Fig. 226 - [B].
- Unlock the fuse in the direction of the arrow [2] with the screwdriver.
- Remove the headlight in the direction of the arrow [3].
- Remove the connector.
- Turn bulb holder [A] » Fig. 227 in an **anti-clockwise** direction up to the stop and remove.

- Insert the bulb holder with the new bulb into the headlight and turn **clockwise** as far as the stop.
- Attach the connector.
- Replace the fog lamp by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow [3] » Fig. 226 and screw tight.
- Insert the protective grille and carefully press it in.

The protective grille must engage firmly.

Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light

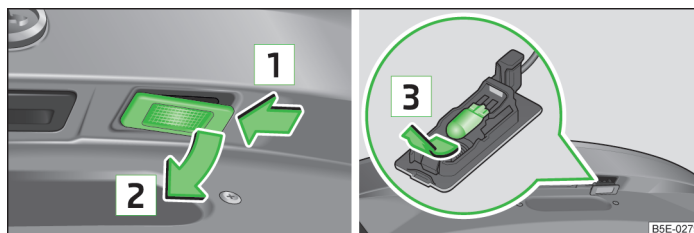


Fig. 228 Remove the number plate light/replace the bulb

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 255.

- Open the luggage compartment lid.
- Push in the lamp in the direction of the arrow [1] » Fig. 228.

The lamp comes loose.

- Swivel out the lamp in the direction of the arrow [2] and remove it.
- Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow [3].
- Insert a new bulb into the holder.
- Reinsert the lamp in the opposite direction to the arrow [1].
- Push on the light until the spring clicks into place.

Check that the light is securely inserted.

Rear light (Octavia)

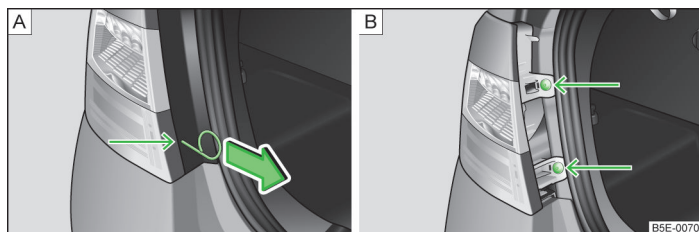


Fig. 229 Remove cover / light

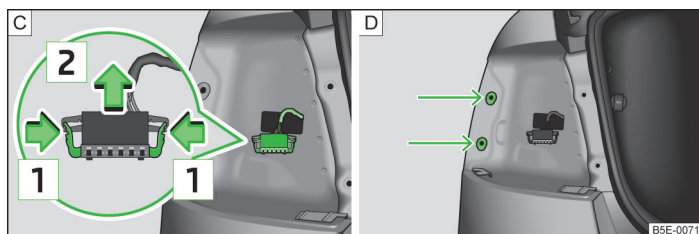


Fig. 230 Installing the lamp connector/lamp

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 255.

Removing

- Open the boot lid.
- Insert the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 236, *Vehicle tool kit* into the hole at the position indicated by the arrow » Fig. 229 - [A].
- Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 229 - [A].
- Use the screwdriver from the tool kit to unscrew the lamp » Fig. 229 - [B].
- Grip the tail lamp and carefully remove it by jiggling it out in the opposite direction of travel.
- Press together the interlocks on the connector in the direction of arrow [1] » Fig. 230 - [C].

- Carefully remove the connector from the tail lamp assembly in the direction of the arrow [2].

Installing

- Insert the connector into the lamp and lock it securely.
- Insert the lamp into the mounts in the body » Fig. 230 - [D].
- Carefully press the tail lamp into the body so that the bolts [1] » Fig. 231 on page 260 on the lamp engage into the mounts in the body » .

Ensure that the cable bundle does not become pinched between the body and the lamp.

- Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover.
- Ensure that the cover engages firmly.

CAUTION

- Ensure that the cable bundle does not become pinched between the body and the lamp when it is being refitted – risk of damage to the electric installation and risk of water ingress.
- If you are not sure whether the cable bundle has become pinched, we recommend that you have the light connection checked by a specialist garage.
- Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the tail lamp.

Replacing bulbs in rear light (Octavia)

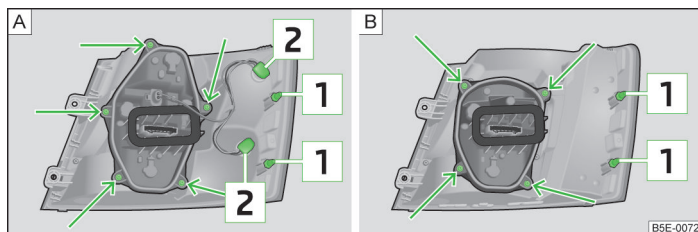


Fig. 231 Outer part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes

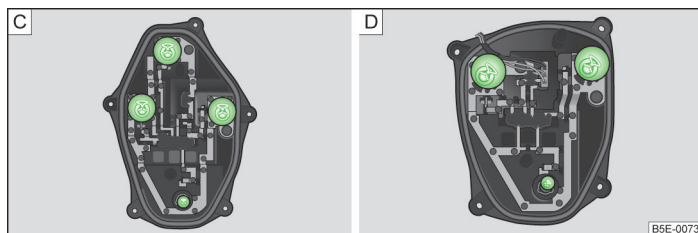


Fig. 232 Inner part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 255.

Outer part of the lamp

- Turn the bulb holder  » Fig. 231 in an **anti-clockwise** direction and remove it from the lamp housing.
- Push the faulty bulb into the holder, turn in **anti** -clockwise direction up to the stop and remove.
- Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn in a **clockwise** direction to the the stop.
- Replace the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in a clockwise direction to the stop.

Inner part of the light

- Unscrew the lamp holder » Fig. 231 -  or  use the screwdriver from the car tool kit, and remove the lamp holder from the tail light assembly.
- Turn the bulb holder **anti-clockwise** up to the stop and remove it from the lamp housing » Fig. 231 -  respectively .
- Replace the bulb, insert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in a **clockwise** direction to the stop.
- Insert the bulb holder in the tail lamp assembly.
- Screw on the lamp holder carefully.

Rear light (Octavia Estate)

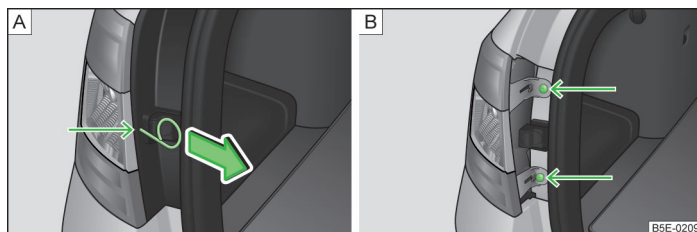


Fig. 233 Remove cover / light

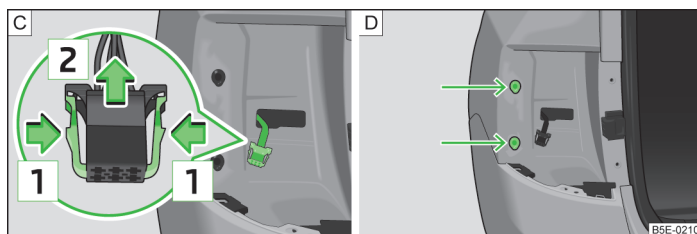


Fig. 234 Installing the lamp connector/lamp

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 255.

Removing

- Open the boot lid.
- Insert the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 236, *Vehicle tool kit* into the hole at the position indicated by the arrow » Fig. 233 - [A].
- Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 233 - [A].
- Use the screwdriver from the tool kit to unscrew the lamp » Fig. 233 - [B].
- Grip the tail lamp and carefully remove it by jiggling it out in the opposite direction of travel.
- Press together the interlocks on the connector in the direction of arrow [1] » Fig. 234 - [C].

- Carefully remove the connector from the tail lamp assembly in the direction of the arrow [2].

Installing

- Insert the connector into the lamp and lock it securely.
- Insert the lamp into the mounts in the body » Fig. 234 - [D].
- Carefully press the tail lamp into the body so that the bolts [1] » Fig. 235 on page 262 on the lamp engage into the mounts in the body » .

Ensure that the cable bundle does not become pinched between the body and the lamp.

- Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover.
- Ensure that the cover engages firmly.

CAUTION

- Ensure that the cable bundle does not become pinched between the body and the lamp when it is being refitted – risk of damage to the electric installation and risk of water ingress.
- If you are not sure whether the cable bundle has become pinched, we recommend that you have the light connection checked by a specialist garage.
- Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the tail lamp.

Replacing bulbs in rear light (Octavia Estate)

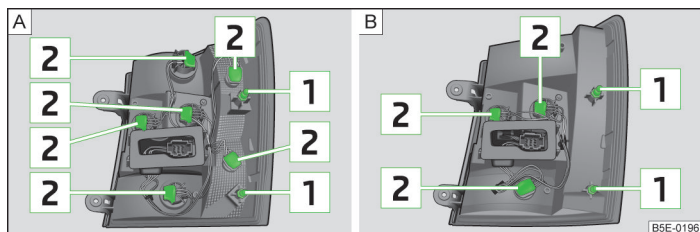


Fig. 235 Outer part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 255.

Outer part of the lamp

- Turn the bulb holder  » Fig. 235 in an **anti-clockwise** direction and remove it from the lamp housing.
- Push the faulty bulb into the holder, turn in **anti** -clockwise direction up to the stop and remove.
- Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn in a **clockwise** direction to the the stop.
- Replace the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in a clockwise direction to the stop.

Technical data

Technical data

Vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle identification data	263
Dimensions	265
Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type	267

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle identification data

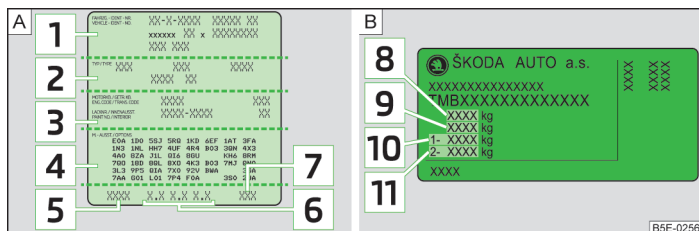


Fig. 236 Vehicle data sticker/type plate



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 263.

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 236 - [A] is located underneath the floor covering in the boot.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data:

- 1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- 2 Vehicle type
- 3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
- 4 Partial vehicle description
- 5 Operating weight (in kg)
- 6 Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) - intra-urban/extra-urban/combined
- 7 CO₂ emission levels - combined (in g/km)

The indicated positions [5], [6] and [7] on the vehicle data sticker are only valid for some countries.

Type plate

The type plate » Fig. 236 - [B] is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the driver's side.

The type plate lists the following weights:

- 8 Maximum permissible gross weight
- 9 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
- 10 Maximum permissible front axle load
- 11 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code).

The VIN can also be displayed in Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems* (CAR button).

Engine number

The engine number (three-digit identifier and serial number) is stamped on the engine block.

Operating weight

The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only. This value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment such as air conditioning system, spare wheel, or trailer hitch.

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

It is possible to calculate the approximate loading capacity from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight » .

The payload consists of the following components:

- Passengers
- All items of luggage and other loads
- Roof load including roof rack system
- Equipment not included in the operating weight
- Trailer hook weight when towing (up to 75 kg and 80 kg for the Octavia Combi 4x4 vehicles).

Fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions according to ECE regulations and EU directives

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards standard urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and -120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.



Note

- If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.
- The fuel consumption and emission values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.
- Depending on the range of equipment, style of driving, traffic situation, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values may deviate from the indicated values.



WARNING

Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

Dimensions



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 263.

Vehicle dimensions (mm)

		Octavia	Octavia RS	Octavia Estate	OCTAVIA Estate 4x4	OCTAVIA Estate RS
Length		4659	4685	4659	4659	4685
Width		1814	1814	1814	1814	1814
Width including exterior mirror		2017	2017	2017	2017	2017
Height	Basic dimension.	1461	-	1465	1465 ^{a)} / 1463 ^{b)}	-
	Vehicles with a rough road package.	1476	-	1480	1480 ^{a)} / 1478 ^{b)}	-
	Vehicles with a SPORT package.	1446	1449	1450	-	1452
Clearance	Basic dimension.	140	-	140	139	-
	Vehicles with a rough road package.	155	-	155	154	-
	Vehicles with a SPORT package.	125	128	125	-	127
Wheel base	Basic dimension.	2686	2680	2686	2680	2680
	Vehicles with the 1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine.	2680	-	2680	-	-

^{a)} Valid for vehicles with 15" rims.

^{b)} Valid for vehicles with 16" rims.

Track gauge front/rear

Rim dimensions	1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI	1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI	1.4 ltr./103 kW TSI	1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI	2.0 ltr./162 kW TSI
15"	1549/1520	1549/1520	-	-	-
16"	-	-	1543/1514	1543/1512 (1541/1510) ^{a)}	-
17"	-	-	-	-	1535/1506

^{a)} Does not apply to Octavia Estate 4x4 vehicles.

Track gauge front/rear

Rim dimensions	1.6 ltr./66 kW TDI	1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI	1.6 ltr./81 kW TDI	2.0 ltr./105 kW TDI	2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI	2.0 ltr./135 kW TDI
15"	1549/1520	1549/1520 (1539/1508) ^{a)}	1549/1520	-	-	-
16"	-	-	-	1543/1514	1543/1514 (1541/1510) ^{a)}	-
17"	-	-	-	-	-	1535/1506

^{a)} Does not apply to Octavia Estate 4x4 vehicles.

Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 263.

The specified values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders / displacement (cm ³)
63/4300-5300	160/1400-3500	4/1197
Driving performances		
Top speed (km/h)	181	178
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12.0	12.2
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1100 ^{a)} / 1300 ^{b)}	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	610	620

^{a)} Slopes up to 12 %

^{b)} Slopes up to 8 %

1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)			Number of cylinders/displacement (cm³)		
77/4500-5500	175/1400-4000			4/1197		
Driving performances	OCTAVIA MG5	OCTAVIA MG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA DSG7 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate MG5	OCTAVIA Estate MG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate DSG7 ^{a)}
Top speed (km/h)	196	196	196	193	193	193
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.3	10.3	10.5	10.5	10.5	10.6
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1300 ^{b)} / 1500 ^{c)}					
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	610	610	620	620	620	630

^{a)} Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

^{b)} Slopes up to 12 %

^{c)} Slopes up to 8 %

1.4 ltr./103 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)		Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)	
103/4500-6000	250/1500-3500		4/1395	
Driving performances	OCTAVIA MG6	OCTAVIA DSG7	OCTAVIA Estate MG6	OCTAVIA Estate DSG7
Top speed (km/h)	215	215	212	212
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.4	8.5	8.5	8.6
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1500 ^{a)} / 1800 ^{b)}			
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	620	630	630	640

^{a)} Slopes up to 12 %

^{b)} Slopes up to 8 %

1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)		Max. torque (Nm per rpm)			Number of cylinders/displacement (cm³)	
MG6, DSG6	132/5100-6200	250/1250-5000			4/1798	
DSG6 4x4	132/4500-6200	280/1350-4500				
Driving performances		OCTAVIA MG6	OCTAVIA DSG7	OCTAVIA Estate MG6	OCTAVIA Estate DSG7	OCTAVIA Estate DSG6,4x4 ^{a)}
Top speed (km/h)		231	231	229	229	227
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		7.3	7.4	7.4	7.5	7.5
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		1600 ^{b)} / 1800 ^{c)}				
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		650	660	660	670	720

^{a)} Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

^{b)} Slopes up to 12 %

^{c)} Slopes up to 8 %

2.0 ltr./162 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)		Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)	
162/4500-6200	350/1500-4400		4/1984	
Driving performances	OCTAVIA RS MG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA RS DSG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate RS MG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate RS DSG6 ^{a)}
Top speed (km/h)	248	245	244	242
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	6.8	6.9	6.9	7.1
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1600 ^{b)} / 1800 ^{c)}			
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	710	720	720	730

^{a)} Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

^{b)} Slopes up to 12 %

^{c)} Slopes up to 8 %

1.6 ltr./66 kW TDI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders / displacement (cm³)
66/2750-4800	230/1400-2700	4/1598
Driving performances	OCTAVIA MG5	OCTAVIA Estate MG5
Top speed (km/h)	186	183
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12.2	12.3
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1400 ^{a)} / 1700 ^{b)}	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	640	650

^{a)} Slopes up to 12 %

^{b)} Slopes up to 8 %

1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)			Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)	
77/3000-4000	250/1500-2750			4/1598	
Driving performances	OCTAVIA MG5	OCTAVIA DSG7 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate MG5	OCTAVIA Estate DSG7 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate MG6 4x4 ^{a)}
Top speed (km/h)	194	194	191	191	188
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.8	10.9	11.0	11.1	11.7
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1500 ^{b)} / 1800 ^{c)}				1700 ^{b)} / 2000 ^{c)}
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	640/650 ^{a)}	650	650/660 ^{a)}	660	710

a) Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

b) Slopes up to 12 %

c) Slopes up to 8 %

1.6 ltr./81 kW TDI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
81/3250-4000	250/1500-3000	4/1598
Driving performances	OCTAVIA MG6	OCTAVIA Estate MG6
Top speed (km/h)	206	204
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.6	10.7

2.0 ltr./105 kW TDI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)		Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)	
105/3500-4000	320/1750-3000		4/1968	
Driving performances	OCTAVIA MG6	OCTAVIA DSG6	OCTAVIA Estate MG6	OCTAVIA Estate DSG6
Top speed (km/h)	215	212	213	210
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.7	8.9	8.7	9.0
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1600 ^{a)} / 1800 ^{b)}			
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	660	670	670	680

a) Slopes up to 12 %

b) Slopes up to 8 %

2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)			Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)	
110/3500-4000	320/1750-3000			4/1968	
Driving performances	OCTAVIA MG6	OCTAVIA DSG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate MG6	OCTAVIA Estate DSG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate MG6 4x4 ^{a)}
Top speed (km/h)	218	215	216	213	213
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.5	8.6	8.6	8.7	8.7
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1600 ^{b)} / 1800 ^{c)}				2000
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	660	670	670	680	720

^{a)} Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

^{b)} Slopes up to 12 %

^{c)} Slopes up to 8 %

2.0 ltr./135 kW TDI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)		Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)	
135/3500-4000	380/1750-3000		4/1968	
Driving performances	OCTAVIA RS MG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA RS DSG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate RS MG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate RS DSG6 ^{a)}
Top speed (km/h)	232	230	230	228
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.1	8.2	8.2	8.3
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1600 ^{b)} / 1800 ^{c)}			
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	730	740	740	750

^{a)} Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

^{b)} Slopes up to 12 %

^{c)} Uphills up to 8 %

Index

A

Abroad			
Driving abroad	136	AFS	57
Unleaded petrol	136	Airbag	185
ABS		Deactivating	191
Function	138	Deactivating the front passenger airbag	191
Warning light	18	Deployment	185
ACC	148	Front airbag	187
Accessories	200	Head airbag	189
Adaptive cruise control	148	Knee airbag	188
automatic stop-start	151	Modifications and damage to the airbag system	203
Information messages	154	Side airbag	188
Instructions and Information	148	warning light	19
Operation	150	Airbag system	185
Operation Overview	151	Air conditioning system	
Radar sensor	149	Air outlets	107
Set/change the desired speed.	152	Climatronic	112
Set time interval level	153	Manual air conditioning system	110
special driving conditions	153	Air outlets	107
Start control	152	Air recirculation	
Stop/resume control	152	Climatronic	114
Adaptive headlights (AFS)	57	Alarm	
Adjust		Switching off	42
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)	116	Triggering	42
Adjusting		Anti-theft alarm system	
Belt height	183	Activating/deactivating	42
Exterior mirrors	69	Trailer	174
Head restraints	73	Antilock Braking System	138
Interior mirror	69	Area monitoring system	154
Manual air conditioning	111	Armrest	
Seats	71, 72	Front	77
Steering wheel	118	Rear	77
Adjusting the seats	71, 177	Artificial leather	210
Adjustment		Ashtray	83
Headlight beam	55	ASR	
Aerial	204	warning light	17
		Assistant systems	
		Front Assist	154
		Assist system	
		ABS	138
		Assist systems	137
		ABS	18
		Adaptive cruise control	148
		ASR	17
		Cruise Control System	146
		Driving mode	161
		DSR	139
		EDL	139
		ESC	18, 137
		HBA	139
		Headlight assist	58
		HHC	139
		Lane Assist	164
		Park assist	142
		Parking aid	140
		ProActive passenger protection	163
		START-STOP	158
		TCS	138
		XDS	139
		Auto-check control	14
		Automatic driving lamp control	57
		Automatic gearbox	
		Selector lever-emergency unlocking	249
		Starting-off and driving	129
		Tiptronic	128
		Automatic load deactivation	227
		automatic transmission	
		selector lever lock defect	128
		Automatic transmission	126
		Kickdown	129
		Selector lever lock	128
		Using the selector lever	127
		Automatic Transmission	
		indicator	16
		malfunction	16
		warning messages	16
		Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)	115
		Adjust	116
		Radio remote control	116
		Switching on/off	116

Avoiding damage to the vehicle	
Driving through water	135
Avoiding damage to your vehicle	135

B

Ball head	
Check fitting	171
Ball rod	
installing	170
Ready position	170
removing	171
Battery	
In the remote control key	247
Replace the remote control of the auxiliary heater (parking heater)	247
Belts	180
Belt tensioners	183
Bonnet	
Closing	217
Opening	217
Boot	
Class N1 vehicles	92
See Boot lid	44
Boot lid	
Automatic locking	44
Closing	44
Opening	44
Brake	
information messages	16
warning light	16
Brake booster	125
Brake fluid	223
Changing	223
Checking	223
information messages	16
Brake linings	
warning light	20
Brakes	
Brake assist systems	137
Brake booster	125

Brake fluid	223
Handbrake	125
Running in	131

Braking

Information on braking	125
------------------------	-----

Breakdown kit

Break recommendation	
See Fatigue detection	168

Bulbs

Replacing	255
-----------	-----

Button in the driver's door

Electrical power windows	47
--------------------------	----

C

Car computer

see multifunction display	29
---------------------------	----

Cargo element

	98
--	----

Car park ticket holder

	80
--	----

Carrier

	103
--	-----

Cavity protection

	208
--	-----

Central locking button

	39
--	----

Change

bulb for additional parking light	257
-----------------------------------	-----

Changing

Brake fluid	223
-------------	-----

Engine oil	221
------------	-----

Wheels	237
--------	-----

Changing a wheel

Follow-up tasks	238
-----------------	-----

Preparation	237
-------------	-----

Removing and refitting a wheel	238
--------------------------------	-----

Charging a vehicle battery

	226
--	-----

Check

Fit ball head properly	171
------------------------	-----

Checking

Battery electrolyte level	226
---------------------------	-----

Brake fluid	223
-------------	-----

Coolant	222
---------	-----

Engine oil	220
------------	-----

Oil level	220
-----------	-----

Windscreen washer fluid	218
-------------------------	-----

Children and safety

Child safety

Side airbag	195
-------------	-----

Child safety lock

	40
--	----

Child safety seat

Use of child safety seats	195
---------------------------	-----

Child seat

Classification	195
----------------	-----

ISOFIX	196
--------	-----

on the front passenger seat	194
-----------------------------	-----

TOP TETHER	197
------------	-----

Use of ISOFIX child seats	196
---------------------------	-----

Chrome parts

refer to Taking care of your vehicle	206
--------------------------------------	-----

Cigarette lighter

	83
--	----

Cleaning

Alcantara	210
-----------	-----

Artificial leather	210
--------------------	-----

cloths	210
--------	-----

Covers of electrically heated seats	210
-------------------------------------	-----

Headlight lenses	207
------------------	-----

Natural leather	209
-----------------	-----

Plastic parts	206
---------------	-----

Wheels	208
--------	-----

Climatronic

	112
--	-----

Air recirculation	114
-------------------	-----

automatic mode	113
----------------	-----

Control elements	112
------------------	-----

Controlling blower	114
--------------------	-----

Cooling system	113
----------------	-----

Defrosting windscreen	115
-----------------------	-----

Setting temperature	113
---------------------	-----

Clothes hook

	88
--	----

Cockpit

12-volt power outlet	84
----------------------	----

Ashtray	83
---------	----

Cigarette lighter	83
-------------------	----

General view	9
--------------	---

Lighting	61
----------	----

Practical equipment	79	De-icing the windscreen and rear window	64	Driving economically	
Storage compartments	79	Deactivating an airbag	191	Economical gear changing	132
Comfort control		Decorative films	206	Driving mode	161
window	49	Delayed locking of the boot lid		driving mode select	
COMING HOME	60	see Boot lid	44	Normal mode	162
Compartments	79	Diesel		Driving through water	135
Component protection	202	refer to Fuel	214	DSR	139
Computer		Diesel fuel			
see multifunction display	29	Operation in winter	214		
Convenience consumers	133	Diesel particulate filter	24		
Convenience operation		information messages	24		
sliding / tilting roof (Octavia Estate)	53	Digital Clock			
sliding / tilting roof (Octavia)	51	Time	14		
Coolant	221	Dipstick	220		
Checking	222	Disconnecting and reconnecting			
indicator symbol	22	vehicle battery	227		
Replenishing	222	Display	12		
Temperature gauge	13	Compass points	28		
warning messages	22	Coolant temperature	13		
CORNER		Correct gear changes	27	Eco tips	28
See Fog lights with CORNER function	59	Fuel supply	13	EDL	139
Correct seated position	177	Service interval	33	Electrical power windows	49
Driver	178	Distance driven	14	Button in the driver's door	47, 48
Front passenger	178	Door		Button in the rear doors	48
Instructions	179	Child safety lock	40	Operational faults	49
Rear seats	178	Closing	40	Electric luggage compartment lid	
Counter for distance driven	14	Emergency locking the driver's door	248	Acoustic signals	46
Cruise control system		Opening	40	Adjusting the top lid position	46
Activating/deactivating	147	Door locking		Deleting the top lid position	46
Changing the stored speed	147	Emergency	248	Force limiter	44
Storing and maintaining speed	147	Doors		Malfunctions	47
Switching off temporarily	147	Emergency locking	248	manual operation	44
Warning light	21	Door warning	28	Operating	45
Cruise Control System	146	double hooks	93	Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)	139
Cup holders	82	Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR)	139	Electronic immobiliser	120
		Driving		Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	137
		Abroad	136	Emergency	
		Driving through water on streets	135	Automatic gearbox	249
		Emissions	263	Changing a wheel	237
		Fuel consumption	263	Door locking	248

D

DAY LIGHT	
see Daylight running lights	55
Daylight running lights	55

Hazard warning light system	61	Exhaust inspection system		Fuel consumption	131
Jump-starting	243	Warning light	19	fuel filter	
Locking the driver's door	248			warning messages	25
Start engine - KESSY	124	F		Fuses	
Switching off the ignition -KESSY	124			Assignment	251
Towing the using the tow hitch	246	Fastening elements	92	Assignment of fuses in the dash panel	253
Towing the vehicle	244	Fatigue detection	168	Colour coding	251
Tyre repair	240	Function	168	Fuse assignment in the engine compartment	254
Unlocking the driver's door	248	Information messages	168	Plastic clip	254
Unlocking the tailgate	249	Films	206	Replacing	251
Emergency equipment		Fire extinguisher	236		
Fire extinguisher	236	First aid kit	235	G	
First aid kit	235	Floor covering			
Jack	236	Fixing	94	Gear change	
Vehicle tool kit	236	Fog lights	59	Gear recommendation	27
Warning triangle	235	Warning light	21	Information on the selected gear	27
Emissions	263	Fog lights with CORNER function	59	Gear changing	
Engine		Footmats	126	Gear stick	126
Running in	130	see footmats	126	General view	
Engine compartment	215	Force limit		Cockpit	9
Brake fluid	223	Power windows	49	Glasses storage box	86
Coolant	222	Force limiter		Glow plug system	
Overview	218	electric luggage compartment lid (Octavia Estate)	44	Warning light	19
Vehicle battery	224	sliding/tilting roof (Octavia Estate)	52		
Engine oil	219	sliding/tilting roof (Octavia)	50	H	
Capacity	219	Front airbag	187		
Changing	221	Front Assist	154	Handbrake	125
Checking	220	Activating/deactivating	157	Warning light	16
indicator symbol	23	City emergency braking	157	Hazard warning light system	61
Replenishing	221	Information messages	158	HBA	139
Specifications	219	Instructions and Information	155	Head airbag	189
Warning icon	23	Operation	156	Headlight assist	58
Environment	131	Radar sensor	155	Warning icon	25
Environmental compatibility	134	Front door warning light	63	Headlight cleaning system	
Environmentally friendly driving	131	Fuel	212	Headlight cleaning system	67
EPC		Diesel	214	Headlights	
Warning light	19	Fuel gauge	13	Bulb arrangement	256
ESC		refer to Fuel	212	Driving abroad	136
Function	137	Refuelling	212	Headlight cleaning system	67
Warning light	18	Unleaded petrol	213	Head restraint	73
		Warning icon	25		

Heater	
Windscreen and rear window	64
Heating	
Defrosting windows	109
Exterior mirrors	69
operating	108
Recirculated air mode	109
Seats	76
Heating and air-conditioning	106
HHC	139
Hill Hold Control (HHC)	139
Hooks (Octavia Estate)	94
Horn	9
Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)	139

I

Ice warning	
Warning icon	25
Ignition	120
Immobiliser	120
Individual settings	
Locking	39
Unlocking	39
Inertia reel	183
Information message	
see KESSY	41
Information system	26
Compass point display	28
Door warning	28
Eco tips	28
Gear recommendation	27
Information on the display	148
Lap timer	32
MAXI DOT display	31
Multifunction display	29
Operation	26
Outside temperature	27
Service interval display	33
Stop watch	32

Instrument cluster	11
Auto-check control	14
Counter for distance driven	14
Display	12
Fuel gauge	13
Overview	11
Revolutions counter	12
see Instrument cluster	11
Speedometer	12
Temperature gauge	13
Viewing the charge level of the vehicle battery	14
Warning icons	21
Warning lights	15
interior light	
Front	62
Interior monitor	43
ISOFIX	196

J

Jack	236
Jacking points	
Raise vehicle	239
Jump-starting	243

K

KESSY	
Information message	41
lock	41
Lock / unlock the steering	122
Starting the engine	123
Switching off the engine	123
Switching off the ignition	123
Switching on the ignition	123
unlock	41
Key	
Locking	36
Starting the engine	120
Stopping the engine	121
Unlocking	36

Knee airbag	188
--------------------	-----

L

Lamp	
indicator symbol	24
Lamp failure	
indicator symbol	24
Lane Assist	164
Activating/deactivating	165
Explanation of situations	165
Information messages	166
Operation	164
Warning light	20
Lap timer	32
LEAVING HOME	60
Lever	
Main beam	56
Turn signal	56
Windscreen wipers	66
Licht	
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME	60
Light	
Cockpit	61
Fog lights with CORNER function	59
Replacing bulbs	255
Tourist light	58
Light bulbs	
Rear light (Octavia Estate)	261
Rear light (Octavia)	259
lighting	
entry space	63
Lighting	
Luggage compartment	91
Lights	54
Adaptive headlights (AFS)	57
Automatic driving lamp control	57
Daylight running	55
Fog lights	59
Hazard warning light system	61
Headlight beam adjustment	55

Headlight flasher	56	Luggage compartment cover (Octavia Estate)	96	Multifunction box (Octavia Estate)	99
Low beam	55	Luggage compartment lid	43	Multifunction display	
Main beam	56	Luggage net	95	Functions	29
Parking lights	61			Information	29
Rear fog light	60	M		Memory	29
Side lights	55			Operation	26
Switching on/off	55	Main beam	56	N	
Turn signal	56	Warning light	21	N1	92
Warning lights	15	Maintenance	134	Net partition	101
Lights on/off	55	Decorative films	206	Behind the front seats	103
Loads	263	Manual air conditioning		Behind the rear seats	102
Locking		adjusting	111	Removing and refitting the housing	103
Individual settings	39	Recirculated air mode	111	Nets	93
KESY	38	Manual gear changing			
Key	36	see gear changing	126	O	
Remote control	37	Manually setting air conditioning		Oil	
Vehicle key	36	Control elements	110	See Engine oil	220
Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside	39	Materials defect liability	5	warning messages	23
Long-cargo channel	90	MAXI DOT display	31	Oil pressure	
Low beam	55	Lap timer	32	warning messages	23
Luggage compartment	91	Main menu	32	Onboard computer	
Compartment with cargo element	98	Operation	26	see multifunction display	29
Cover	95	Stop watch	32	Operation in winter	
double sided floor covering	94	MAXI DOT see		De-icing windows	207
Emergency unlocking	249	MAXI DOT display	31	Diesel fuel	214
Fastening elements	92	Memory	29	Vehicle battery	226
Fix floor covering	94	Mirror		Outside temperature	27
Fixing nets	93	Exterior mirrors	69	Overview	
Foldable hooks (Octavia Estate)	94	Mirrors		Engine compartment	218
Folding double hooks	93	Interior mirror	69	Warning icons	21
Lighting	91	Vanity	65	Warning lights	15
Luggage net	95	Modes of the automatic transmission	127		
Multifunction box (Octavia Estate)	99	Modifications	200	P	
Roll-up luggage compartment cover (Octavia Estate)	96	Modifications and technical alterations		Paintwork	
Storage compartments under the floor covering	98	Airbags	203	See Paintwork care	205
Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover	97	Service	201	Paintwork care	205
Stowing roof racks	97	Spoiler	202		
Unlocking the tailgate	249	Motor			
Variable loading floor	99	warning messages	22		
Luggage compartment cover	95	Multicollision brake	140		

Park assist	142
Finding a parking space	143
Information messages	145
Parking	144
Parking	
Automatic brake assist	145
Manoeuvring out of a parallel parking space	145
Park assist	142
Parking aid	140
Parking aid	140
Automatic system activation when moving forward	142
Function	141
Road display	142
Parking vehicle	41
Part replacement	200
Passive safety	
Before setting off	176
Driving safety	177
Safety equipment	176
Passive Safety	176
Pedals	126
Footmats	126
Petrol	
refer to Fuel	213
Polishing the paintwork	
See Taking care of your vehicle	205
Power outlet	
12 V	84
Power sockets	
230 V	89
Power steering	119
Warning light	17
Power windows	
Button in the front passenger door	48
Practical features	79
Storage compartment in rear centre console	88
Storage compartment on the passenger side	87
Storage compartment under the passenger seat	87
Storage pockets on the front seats	88
Waste container	85

Practical Features	
Storage compartment in the front center console - not lockable	82
ProActive passenger protection	163
Function	163
warning light	19

R

Radiator fan	218
Radio remote control	
Auxiliary heating	116
Raise vehicle	239
Rear	
interior light	62, 63
Rear-view mirror	
Exterior mirrors	69
Rear fog light	60
Warning light	19
Rear mirror	68
Interior mirror	69
Rear window - heater	64
Recirculated air mode	
Manual air conditioning	111
Refuelling	212
Fuel	212

Remote control	
Locking	37
Replacing the battery	247
Synchronisation process	247
Unlocking	37
Remote control key	
Replacing the battery	247
Removable ski bag	90
Repairs and technical alterations	200
Replacing	
Bulb for daytime running lights and parking lights	257
Bulb for main beam and daytime running lights	256
Bulb for the fog lights	258
Bulb for the licence plate light	258

Bulb in rear light (Octavia Estate)	262
Bulbs	255
Bulbs in rear light (Octavia)	260
Fuses	251
Fuses - engine compartment	254
Fuses - LHD	252
Fuses - RHD	252
Low beam bulb	256
Rear window wiper blade	250
Vehicle battery	227
windscreen wiper blades	250

Replenishing	
Coolant	222
Engine oil	221
Windscreen washer fluid	218
Revolutions counter	12
Roof luggage rack	
Attachment points	104
Roof rack system	103
Roof load	105
Running-in	
the first 1500 km	130
Running in	
Brake pads	131
Engine	130
Tyres	130

S

SAFE	
See Safe securing system	38
SAFELock	
See Safe securing system	38
Safe securing system	38
Safety	176
Child safety	193
Child safety seats	193
Correct seated position	177
Head restraints	73
ISOFIX	196
TOP TETHER	197

Saving electrical energy	131	Service	201	Starting the engine	
Seals		Service interval display	33	Jump-starting	243
Taking care of your vehicle	206	Service intervals	198	Key	120
Seat belt		Setting	14	see KESSY	123
Warning icon	22	Positions of the variable loading floor	100	START STOP	
warning light	17	Setting the	14	Information messages	161
Seat belts	180	Shelves	79	Jump-starting	244
Belt tensioners	183	Shifting gears		Steering force assistance	119
Cleaning	211	Driving and saving energy	132	Steering lock / unlock	
fastening and unfastening	182	Side airbag	188	see KESSY	122
Height adjustment	183	Side lights	55	Steering wheel	118
Seatbelts		ski bag	90	Stopping the engine	
Inertia reels	183	Sliding/tilting roof		Key	121
Seat belts		Closing the sun screen (Octavia Estate)	52	Stop watch	32
The physical principle of a head-on collision	181	Closing (Octavia Estate)	52	Storage compartment in rear centre console	88
Seat features	76	Closing (Octavia)	50	Storage compartment on the passenger side	87
Seats		Opening/closing the sun screen (Octavia Estate)	52	Storage compartments	79
Electric adjustment	73	Opening and tilting (Octavia Estate)	52	Storage compartment under the passenger seat	87
Folding front passenger seat	77	Opening and tilting (Octavia)	50	Storage pockets on the front seats	88
Front armrest	77	Operation (Octavia Estate)	52	Storing skis	90
Head restraints	73	Operation (Octavia)	50	Sun screen	65
Heating	76	Snow chains	234	Sun visors	65
Manually adjusting	72	Spare wheel	232	Switch	
Rear armrest	77	Speedometer	12	See Ignition	120
save	74	see speedometer	12	Switching off the engine	
Seat backrests	78	Speed symbol		see KESSY	123
Storing in memory of remote control key	75	see Wheels	231	Switching off the ignition	
Seats and useful equipment	71	Spoiler	202	see KESSY	123
Adjusting the seats	71	START-STOP	158	Switching on the ignition	
see automatic gearbox		Manually activating/deactivating the system	160	see KESSY	123
Manual shifting of gears on the multifunction		Operating conditions of the system	160	Switching on the ignition	
steering wheel	128	Starting/shutting down the engine	159	see KESSY	123
Select driving mode		Warning icon	25		
Eco mode	162	Starting and stopping the engine - KESSY	121		
Individual mode	163	Starting and stopping the engine using the key	119		
Sport mode	162	Starting engine			
Selecting driving mode	161	Jump-starting	243		
Selector lever					
see Using the selector lever	127				
Selector lever lock					
Warning light	21				

T

Taking care of the vehicle	
Natural leather	209
Seat belts	211
Taking care of your vehicle	
Automatic car wash system	204
Cavity protection	208
Chrome parts	206

Cleaning the wheels	208	Traffic signs		Unlocking	
Decorative films	206	see Traffic sign recognition	166	Individual settings	39
Door lock cylinders	207	Trailer	169, 172	KESSY	38
Headlight lenses	207	13-pin power socket	173	Key	36
High-pressure cleaner	204	driving with a trailer	173	Remote control	37
Plastic parts	206	loading	172	Vehicle key	36
Polishing the paintwork	205	Safety eye	173	Unlocking and locking	35
Rubber seals	206	Trailer stabilisation	174	Useful equipment	
Taking care of the interior	208	Transmission		12-volt power outlet	84
Taking care of your vehicle exterior	205	warning messages	16	230-volt power socket	89
Washing	203	Transport		Ashtray	83
Washing by hand	204	Luggage compartment	91	Car park ticket holder	80
Wash system	204	Roof rack system	103	Cigarette lighter	83
Wax treatment	205	Transporting children safely	193	Clothes hook	88
Taking care of your vehicles		Turn signal	56	Cup holders	82
Fabric covers	210	Turn signal system		Glasses storage box	86
TCS		Warning light	20	Holder for reflective vest	81
Operation	138	Type plate	263	Multimedia holder	85
Warning light	18	Tyre control display		Removable ski bag	90
Technical data	263	Calibration	231	Seat backrest with long-cargo channel	90
Temporary spare wheel	232	Tyre inflation pressure		Storage compartment in the front centre console	82
Tiptronic	128	Warning light	20	Storage compartment on the driver's side	80
Tools	236	Tyre load-bearing capacity		Storage compartments in the doors	81
TOP TETHER	197	see Wheels	230	Storage compartment under the front armrest	86
Towing	244	Tyre repair		Using the information system	26
Towing a trailer	169	Check pressure	242	Using the selector lever	127
Towing device		Preparations	241		
Description	169	Sealing and inflating the tyre	242		
Drawbar load	169	Tyres	228		
Use and care	172	Inflation pressure	229		
Towing eye		New	230		
front	245	See Wheels	230		
Rear	245	Sizes	229		
Towing protection	43	Tyre wear indicator	229		
Traction Control System (TCS)	138				
Traffic sign recognition	166				
Function	166				
Information messages	167				
Traffic Sign Recognition					
Notifications and settings	167				

U

Underbody protection	208
Unleaded petrol	136

Safety instructions	224	Chrome parts	206	Windscreen washer fluid	
Warning icon	22	High-pressure cleaner	204	Checking	218
Vehicle care	198	Waste container	85	Replenishing	218
Alcantara	210	Water		Warning icon	24
Artificial leather	210	Driving through	135	Winter	218
Cloths	210	Water in the fuel filter		Windscreen washers	
Vehicle condition		indicator symbol	25	Windscreen washers	66
see Auto-check control	14	warning messages	25	Windscreen washer system	218
Vehicle data sticker	263	Wax treatment		Windscreen wipers	
Vehicle dimensions	265	See Taking care of your vehicle	205	Operating	66
Vehicle height	265	Weights	263	Replacing the windscreen wipers	250
vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number)	263	Wheel bolts		Windscreen washer fluid	218
Vehicle key		Anti-theft wheel bolt	240	Windscreen wipers and washers	65
Locking	36	Caps	233	Winter operation	234
Unlocking	36	Loosening and tightening	239	Snow chains	234
Vehicle length	265	Wheel rims	228	Winter tyres	234
Vehicle tool kit	236	Wheels		Winter tyres	
Vehicle width	265	Bolts	233	See Wheels	234
Vest		Changing	237	Wiper blades	
Holder for reflective vest	81	Full trim	233	Service position of the windscreen wiper arms	250
Visibility	64	General information	228		
Visors		Load index	230		
see Sun screen	65	Low-profile tyres	231		
see Sun visors	65	Replacing wheels	229		
		Service life of tyres	229		
		Snow chains	234		
		Spare wheel	232		
		Speed symbol	231		
		Storing wheels	229		
		Temporary spare wheel	232		
		Tyre pressure	229		
		Tyre sizes	229		
		Tyre wear indicator	229		
		Winter tyres	234		
		Windows			
		De-icing	207		
		See Electrical power windows	47		
		Window wiper			
		Replacing the rear window wiper blade	250		
		Windscreen			
		Heater	64		

X

XDS	139
------------------	-----

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. pursues a policy of constant product and model development. We trust that you will understand that changes to models in terms of shape, equipment and engineering, may be introduced at any time. The information about appearance, performances, dimensions, weight, standards and functions of the vehicle is correct at the time of publication. Some equipment might only be introduced at a later date, or is only offered in certain markets. Information is provided by ŠKODA partners. It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the data, illustrations and descriptions contained in this Owner's Manual.

Reprinting, duplicating, translating and any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s..

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2013

ŠKODA Service App – ŠKODA Service in your pocket

The ŠKODA Service application is designed for smartphones operating on iOS and Android systems, and its purpose is to help ŠKODA AUTO customers in any difficult situation they may encounter on their travels.

My dealer – choose your nearest or preferred Service Centre.

Assistance – contact the Assistance Service or your favourite dealer.

My car – complete Owner's Manual and summary list of all control lamps for quick review



Available to download from AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

ŠKODA Manual App – Know your vehicle

The ŠKODA Manual application aims on users of tablet PCs who are interested in ŠKODA vehicles or already own one. The application contains full featured digital version of the Owner's Manual for all current ŠKODA models.

- › Navigation through the **list of content**
- › Classical **reading page by page**
- › **Full text search** throughout the whole manual
- › **Bookmarks** for fast access to favourite chapters



You also can do something for the environment!

The fuel consumption of your ŠKODA and the related pollutant emissions are determined crucially on how you drive.

The noise and the wear of the vehicle depend on the way how you deal with your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual shows you how to use your ŠKODA vehicle with utmost care for the environment while driving economically at the same time.

Also please pay attention to those parts in the Owner's Manual that are marked  below.

Work with us – for the sake of the environment.